

## Unit

## 1

## Can you play the guitar?

## Period 1

## Section A (1a—2d)

## 预习起航



写出下列单词的词性和含义。

单词	词性	含义
guitar		
chess		
sing		
swim		
dance		
draw		
speak		

## 名师导航



## 1. join

【辨析】join 与 join in

join 意为“参加；加入”，指加入某党派、某组织或某社会团体，并成为其中一员。join in 意为“参加(某项活动、比赛)”。

I joined the swimming club. 我加入了游泳俱乐部。

She joined the Party in 1992. 她 1992 年入的党。

Many people join in the game every year. 每年都有很多人参加这项运动。

## 2. like to do sth. , like doing sth.

【辨析】like to do sth. 与 like doing sth.

like to do sth. 意为“喜欢做某事；想要做某事”，表示短暂性的喜欢或想要做某事。like

doing sth. 意为“喜欢做某事”，表示以前就喜欢，而且还可能持续，常表示一个人长期的爱好。

—What are your hobbies? 你有什么爱好?

—I like reading books. 我喜欢看书。

I like to swim this afternoon. 今天下午我想去游泳。

【提示】在美式英语中，like doing 与 like to do 常常可以互相换用。

## 3. be good at

be good at 意为“善于……；擅长于……”，后接名词或动词的现在分词。

I'm good at basketball. 我擅长打篮球。

He is good at playing soccer. 他擅长踢足球。

【拓展】be good at 的同义词组：do well in.

She does well in math. 她的数学很好。

## 演练巡航



一、根据句意及首字母的提示补全单词。

1. —Can \_\_\_\_\_ you dance?

—Yes, I can.

2. I want to join \_\_\_\_\_ the music club.

3. —What sports \_\_\_\_\_ can you play?

—Basketball.

4. Mary wants to join the English club, but \_\_\_\_\_

she can't speak English.

二、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. My mother \_\_\_\_\_ (like) art.

2. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ (swim) together.

3. I like singing/to sing (sing) songs.  
 4. She is (be) good at history.  
 5. John wants to play (play) chess after class.

三、根据表格内容完成对话。

	Can	Can't
Lisa	speak English	swim
Anna	play the guitar	speak Chinese

1. Teacher: Can you speak English, Lisa?  
 Lisa: Yes, I can.  
 Teacher: Can you swim?  
 Lisa: No, I can't.  
 2. Teacher: Can you play the guitar, Anna?  
 Anna: Yes, I can.  
 Teacher: Can you speak Chinese?

Anna: No, I can't.

四、补全对话。

- A: 1. Do you like music/to sing/to dance?  
 B: Yes, I do. I want to join the music club.  
 A: 2. What club does Andy want to join?  
 B: Andy wants to join the English club.  
 A: 3. Can Jack swim?  
 B: Yes. Jack can swim, but he wants to join the soccer club.  
 A: 4. What club do your sisters want to join?  
 B: My sisters want to join the music club.  
 A: Oh, I see.  
 B: What club do your friends want to join?  
 A: They like sports. 5. They want to join the sports club.

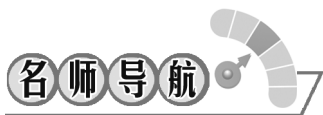
## Period 2

## Section A (Grammar Focus—3c)



英汉互译。

- 下象棋 play chess  
 speak English 说英语  
 讲故事 tell stories  
 speak Chinese 说中文  
 打排球 play volleyball  
 write stories 写故事  
 踢(英式)足球 play soccer  
 do kung fu 会(中国)功夫  
 放学后 after school  
 和琳达谈谈 talk to Linda



### 1. can

can 是情态动词, 没有人称和数的变化, 后跟动词原形。其否定形式是后面加 not, 一般缩写为 can't。在一般疑问句中, can 要位于

句首。

肯定句:

She can play the guitar. 她会弹吉他。

否定句:

She can't play the guitar. 她不会弹吉他。

一般疑问句及肯定和否定回答:

—Can she play the guitar? 她会弹吉他吗?

—Yes, she can. / No, she can't. 是的, 她会。 / 不, 她不会。

### 2. show

①作名词时, 意为“显示; 表演; 展出”。

Do you like the talk show? 你喜欢脱口秀吗?

②作动词时, 意为“显示; 演出; 展出; 引领”。

Please show me your ticket. 请出示你的门票。

It's very good of you to come. Let me show you my study. 你能来真是太好了。让我带你看看我的书房。

### 3. talk

【辨析】talk, tell 与 speak

talk 意为“谈话;聊天”。tell 意为“告诉;讲述”,固定搭配:tell sb. sth. 或 tell sth. to sb.。  
speak 意为“讲(某种语言)”。

She is talking with Lucy in English. 她正在和露茜用英语交谈。

What are you talking about? 你们在谈论什么?

The teacher is talking to him. 老师正在和他谈话。

Please tell her the news. / Please tell the news to her. 请告诉她这个消息。

speak English 讲英语

speak Chinese 说中文



#### 一、根据要求完成句子。

1. Can you play the piano? (作肯定回答)

Yes, I can.

2. Can he dance? (作否定回答)

No, he can't.

3. Bob and Mike can tell stories. (改为一般疑问句)

Can Bob and Mike tell stories ?

4. I want to join the swimming club. (对画线部分提问)

What club do you want to join ?

5. Tom likes to play chess. (对画线部分提问)

What does Tom like to do?

6. She can play tennis. (对画线部分提问)

What can she do ?

7. They want to join the music club. (对画线部分提问)

What club do they want to join ?

#### 二、翻译下列句子。

1. 玛丽会说中文吗?

Can Mary speak Chinese ?

2. 你会做什么?

What can you do ?

3. 吉尔想参加什么俱乐部?

What club does Jill want to join ?

4. 莉莉和凯特会下象棋。

Lily and Kate can play chess .

#### 三、单项选择。

( D ) 1. —Can you play basketball \_\_\_\_\_ play soccer?

—I can play basketball.

A. so            B. and

C. for            D. or

( C ) 2. —\_\_\_\_\_ can he do?

—He can swim.

A. Where        B. Why

C. What         D. How

( A ) 3. Jane can \_\_\_\_\_.

A. dance        B. dancing

C. dances        D. to dance

( B ) 4. —What club do you want to join?

—I want to join the English club, \_\_\_\_\_ I can't speak English.

A. so            B. but

C. if             D. and

( D ) 5. —Do you want to join the \_\_\_\_\_ club?

—No, I don't. I don't like to sing or dance.

A. art            B. sports

C. soccer        D. music

( C ) 6. —What club does Tina want to join?

—She wants \_\_\_\_\_ the chess club.

A. join            B. joins

C. to join        D. joining

( B ) 7. —Is your brother good at \_\_\_\_\_?

—Yes, he is.

A. swim         B. swimming

C. swims         D. to swim

( A ) 8. —You like \_\_\_\_\_ stories, so you can join the story \_\_\_\_\_ club.

—Sounds good.

A. to tell; telling    B. telling; to tell

C. tell; telling        D. to tell; tell

( D ) 9. —How many languages(语言) can you \_\_\_\_\_?

—Three. Chinese, English and French.

A. say      B. ask

C. talk      D. speak

( C ) 10. —What can you \_\_\_\_\_, Jill?

—I can do kung fu.

A. play      B. like

C. do      D. show

### Period 3      Section B (1a—1f)



一、列出你所知道的乐器名称。

二、根据你的实际情况回答下列问题。

1. Can you sing?

2. Can you dance?

3. What can you do?



1. or

①连词，用在选择疑问句中连接被选择的对象，意为“或者；还是”。

Is he a doctor or a teacher? 他是医生还是教师?

下列两个疑问句中的并列成分由于使用了不同的连词，因而意思有所不同。试比较：

Does he like milk and bread? 他喜欢牛奶和面包吗?

(此句是一般疑问句，回答是：Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.)

Does he like milk or bread? 他喜欢牛奶还是面包?

(此句是选择疑问句，回答是：He likes milk. / He likes bread.)

②用于否定句中连接并列成分，表示“和；与”之意。

There isn't any air or water on the moon. 月球上既没有空气，也没有水。

The baby is too young. He can't speak or

walk. 那婴儿太小。他不会说话，也不会走路。

【提示】肯定句中并列连词应用 and，在把含有 and 的肯定句改为否定句时，需要将连词 and 改为 or。

I can sing and dance. 我会唱歌和跳舞。

I can't sing or dance. 我不会唱歌和跳舞。

2. play

①play 与球类、棋牌类名词组成词组时，表示“参与球类、棋牌类运动或比赛”，球类、棋牌类的名词前不加定冠词，如：play soccer, play football, play tennis, play ping-pong, play chess, play cards 等。

②play 与乐器名词组成词组时，表示“演奏”，乐器名词前需要加定冠词，如：play the violin, play the guitar, play the pipa, play the erhu 等。



一、看图写短语。



play football



play basketball



play ping-pong



play the violin





play the piano

play the drums

## 二、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. Can Jack dance (dance)?
2. My father can play the drums (drum).
3. Cindy wants (want) to join the English club.
4. They can play the piano (piano).
5. Can Bill play volleyball (volleyball)?
6. He is good at drawing (draw).
7. I like to write stories (story).

## 三、选词填空。

drums	can't	piano	play
can	for	he	what
she	no		

- A: We want some students for school music band. Can you sing, Tom?
- B: No, I can't. But I can play the guitar.
- A: OK. Who can play the drums? Can Bill play the drums?

B: Yes, he can.

A: Can Linda play the piano?

B: No, she can't.

A: So, what can Linda do?

B: She can sing.

A: Great. Who can play the piano?

B: Joe can play the piano.

## 四、根据表格内容完成对话。

	Can	Can't
Peter	draw	play the violin
Sarah	play the piano	dance
Zhao Ke	play the guitar	play the drums

A: Can Peter draw \_\_\_\_\_?

B: Yes, he can. But he can't play the violin.

A: Can Sarah dance \_\_\_\_\_?

B: No, she can't.

A: What can Sarah do \_\_\_\_\_?

B: She can play the piano.

A: Can Zhao Ke play the guitar \_\_\_\_\_?

B: Yes, he can. But he can't play the drums.

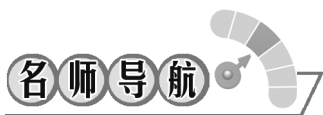
## Period 4

## Section B (2a-2c)



### 根据句意用适当的单词或短语填空。

1. I can sing and I can also play the guitar.
2. He can play chess and he can draw, too.
3. Lucy likes children and often plays with them.  
She is good with children.
4. I'm a new student here. I want to make  
friends with my new classmates.
5. —Are you busy on the weekend?  
—No, I'm busy on weekdays.



### 1. also

also 意为“也”，用在肯定句中，常放在实义

动词前面或系动词 be 及情态动词的后面，位于句首或句子中间。

Tina can play the drums. She can also play the violin. 蒂娜会打鼓，也会拉小提琴。

She is also an American. 她也是美国人。

### 2. help

help 可用作动词和名词，意为“帮助”。

①作动词时的结构：help sb. to do sth. 或 help sb. do sth. 意为“帮助某人做某事”；help sb. with sth. 意为“在某方面帮助某人”。

Lucy helps me (to) do housework. 露茜帮我做家务。

I help my brother with his math. 我帮助我弟弟学数学。

②作名词时，为不可数名词。

I need some help for the school party. 为了学校的聚会，我需要一些帮助。

### 3. be good with

be good with 意为“与……相处得好；善于应付……”，后接 sb.。

He is good with the old people. 他与老人相处得好。

试区别下列结构相似的词组：

be good at 擅长于……

be good for 对……有好处

### 4. English-speaking

这是一个形容词，由 English 和 speaking 合并构成，表示“说英语的”。

English-speaking student 说英语的学生



#### 一、单项选择。

- ( C ) 1. We \_\_\_\_\_ some students to help the old people.  
A. like                      B. join  
C. need                      D. are
- ( D ) 2. —Can you sing \_\_\_\_\_ tell stories?  
—I am good at telling stories.  
A. and                      B. of  
C. for                      D. or
- ( A ) 3. —What can your sister do?  
—She can swim, and she can \_\_\_\_\_ draw.  
A. also                      B. too  
C. so                      D. and
- ( C ) 4. Linda likes to play the drums, but she \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
A. isn't good with  
B. doesn't help with  
C. isn't good at  
D. isn't busy with
- ( B ) 5. —What \_\_\_\_\_ can you play?  
—I can play volleyball.

A. music

B. sports

C. chess

D. guitar

#### 二、选词填空。

too	student	club	speak
is	help	football	she

I'm Carol. I'm a student. I can speak English. I can sing English songs. I like to play football. My friend Jeff is a boy. He is a student, too. He likes to play football, and he is in school football club. Ann is my friend, too. She can play the violin, but she can't play football. Jeff and I often help her play football.

#### 三、阅读理解。

阅读下面的两则广告，根据广告内容选择正确答案。

English Club
Are you free on Saturday? Are you good at speaking English? We need one female(女性的) English teacher.
Telephone: 337-4456

Music Club
Can you sing or dance? Can you play the drums or the guitar? We need five students for the school party. Call Mr. Green at 963-7742.

- ( B ) 1. The English Club needs \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. a Chinese teacher  
B. an English teacher  
C. a Chinese student  
D. an English student
- ( A ) 2. Jane can speak English well, she can call \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. 337-4456                      B. 337-4256  
C. 963-7742                      D. 963-7743
- ( D ) 3. How many students does the music club need?  
A. 1.      B. 3.      C. 4.      D. 5.

## Period 5 Section B (3a—Self Check)



按要求写短语。

play+球类: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

play+乐器: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



### 1. musician

musician 是可数名词,意为“音乐家;音乐人”,其复数形式为 musicians。

【拓展】music 是名词,意为“音乐”;musical 是形容词,意为“音乐的;悦耳的”。

### 2. wanted for

wanted for 在这里是广告用语,表示“招收……;需要……”。wanted 前面是要招收的对象,介词 for 后跟招收单位或组织等。

Musicians Wanted for Rock Band 滚石乐队亟需音乐家

English Teachers Wanted for No. 1 Middle School 第一中学招聘英语教师

### 3. 本单元写作指导

本单元的写作话题主要是介绍自己、朋友或同学的才能。文章结构可以这样安排:

①介绍自己、朋友或同学的名字和年龄等

My name is... (I am...)

Her/His name is... (She/He is...)

I'm... (years old).

She/He is... (years old).

②介绍自己、朋友或同学的才能

I/He/She can...

I am good at...

He/She is good at...



一、从方框中选择最恰当的单词或短语,并用其适当形式填空。

show	help with	talk to	center
be good at	music	be good with	

- Lisa, can you help with my history?  
—No problem(没问题).
- I like music. I want to be a musician.
- Can you play the piano? Come and show us.
- Peter is good with the old people. He always helps at the old people's home.
- I like to talk to my friend about my problems(苦恼).
- The library is in the center of our school.
- They are good at English. They often help me with it.

二、根据要求完成句子。

- Zhang Ye can help me learn Chinese. (改为同义句)  
Zhang Ye can help me with Chinese.
- I'm not busy today. (改为同义句)  
I'm free today.
- My brother can draw well. (改为一般疑问句,并作否定回答)  
Can your brother draw well?  
No, he can't.
- They can play soccer. (改为否定句)  
They can't play soccer.
- Jim wants to join the art club. (对画线部分提问)  
What club does Jim want to join?
- Dave can play the piano. Dave can't play the violin. (将两个句子合并成一句)  
Dave can play the piano, but he can't play the violin.

### 三、书面表达。

请先完成表格,然后根据表格内容写一篇不少于 50 个词的作文。

Names	Can	Can't
I: _____		
Friend: _____		
Friend: _____		

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

# Unit 2

## What time do you go to school?

### Period 1

### Section A (1a—2d)

#### 预习起航



一、写出下列数字的英文。

1 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_  
 4 \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_ 6 \_\_\_\_\_  
 7 \_\_\_\_\_ 8 \_\_\_\_\_ 9 \_\_\_\_\_  
 10 \_\_\_\_\_ 20 \_\_\_\_\_ 30 \_\_\_\_\_  
 40 \_\_\_\_\_ 50 \_\_\_\_\_ 15 \_\_\_\_\_  
 45 \_\_\_\_\_

二、写出你一天的活动。

What time?	What do you do?

#### 名师导航



##### 1. dressed

dress 作名词时,意为“长裙”;作动词时,意为“穿衣服”。

dressed 由 dress + ed 构成,用作形容词,意为“穿好衣服的”,常与系动词连用。

##### 2. teeth

teeth 是 tooth 的复数,意为“牙齿”。像这样单数变复数的词还有 foot(脚)→feet 等。

##### 3. at, in, on

【辨析】at, in 与 on

这三个词后面都可以接时间。

at+具体时间:at 6 o'clock, at 10:25

on+具体的某一天(或某一天的上午、下午、晚上):on Sunday, on September 11th, on Monday morning

in+年、月、季节:in 2017, in May, in spring

一些固定搭配:at night, at noon, in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening

##### 4. late

①作形容词时,意为“迟到的;晚的”。

I am late for school. 我上学迟到了。

Don't be late again. 下次不要再迟到了。

②作副词时,意为“迟;晚”。

He always gets up late. 他总是起得晚。

##### 5. job

【辨析】job 与 work

用作名词时,两者均译为“工作”,但 job 主要指有报酬的工作,是可数名词;work 指“工作;劳动”,是一个含义极广的常用词,它是指需要付出努力的工作或劳动,是不可数名词。

He has a good job in the bank. 他在银行有份不错的工作。

I like garden, but I don't like hard work. 我喜欢花园,但是我不喜欢辛苦的劳动。

#### 演练巡航



一、用英文写出下列时间。

6:10 six ten  
 7:15 seven fifteen  
 9:30 nine thirty  
 8:45 eight forty-five

10:50 ten fifty  
 12:00 twelve (o'clock)  
 1:20 one twenty  
 2:35 two thirty-five  
 3:25 three twenty-five  
 4:18 four eighteen

二、根据句意及首字母的提示补全单词。

- I get up at six thirty, then I brush my teeth.
- My mother works at a TV station.
- Bob gets up early every day.
- I usually exercise from six fifteen to seven o'clock in the morning.
- Amy gets up at eight o'clock, so she is always late for school.

三、翻译下列句子。

- 你几点穿衣服?  
What time do you get dressed?
- 我弟弟通常 8 点洗澡。  
My brother usually takes a shower at 8 o'clock.
- 你父亲几点去上班?  
When does your father go to work?
- 我有一份有趣的工作。  
I have an interesting job.
- 他上学从来不迟到。  
He is never late for school.
- 然后我大约在下午 2 点去上学。

Then I go to school at about 2 o'clock in the afternoon.

四、补全对话。

- A: Hi, Billy.  
 B: Hi, Jack.  
 A: Are you busy on weekdays?  
 B: 1. Yes, I am.  
 A: What time do you get up?  
 B: 2. I usually get up at six o'clock.  
 A: It's so early. 3. What time do you usually go to work?  
 B: I go to work at seven o'clock. Do you get up early?  
 A: 4. No, I don't. I usually get up at seven thirty, eat breakfast at eight o'clock, then I go to work at eight twenty.

五、选择单词或短语,并用其适当形式填空。

next some go to school  
 get up brush then

I'm Bob. Every morning, I get up at six o'clock. Then I wash my face and brush my teeth at six fifteen. Next, I eat my breakfast at six twenty. I often eat some bread, one egg and drink a glass of milk. At seven o'clock, I go to school.

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus—3c)



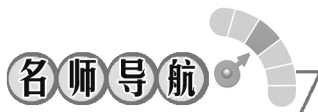
一、写出下列单词的中文意思。

always 一直;总是 usually 通常  
 never 从不

二、根据你的实际情况回答下列问题。

- What time do you usually get up?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- What time does your father have breakfast?  
\_\_\_\_\_

- When do you eat dinner?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- When does your mother go to work?  
\_\_\_\_\_



1. when

【辨析】when 与 what time

连词 when 与短语 what time 都可以用来询问时间,意为“什么时候”。



①当询问做某事的具体时间(钟点)时,两者可以互相替换。

—When / What time do you go to school?  
你什么时候去上学?

—I go to school at seven o'clock. 我7点去上学。

②询问钟表所显示的具体时间时,只能用 what time, 而不能用 when。

—What time is it, Jack? 杰克,几点了?

—It's eight thirty. 8:30.

③询问事件发生的年份、月份、日期等非钟点性时间时,只能用 when 而不能用 what time。

—When is your birthday, John? 约翰,你的生日是哪一天?

—My birthday is on February 6th. 我的生日是2月6日。

—When is Teachers' Day? 教师节是哪一天?

—It's September 10th. 9月10日。

## 2. usually

【辨析】always, usually, often 与 never

这四个词都是频率副词,一般表示动作发生的频率。

①always 意为“总是”,与进行时态连用时,可以表示赞扬,也可以表示讨厌等感情色彩。

I always remember my first day at school.  
我永远记得我上学的第一天。

He is always smoking. 他总是抽烟。

②usually 指通常的动作,但是侧重已经形成的习惯,它是从已经形成的角度来说明动作。

He usually goes to school at seven ten. 他通常7:10上学。

③often 指经常性的动作,意为“常常;经常”。

He is often late for school. 他经常上学迟到。

④never 意为“决不;从未”,表示一次也没有。

He is never late for school. 他上学从来不迟到。

## 3. best

best 是形容词 good 和副词 well 的最高级,意为“最好的(地)”。

This is the best (good 的最高级) way from London to Paris. 这是由伦敦到巴黎最好的走法。

He works best (well 的最高级) in the morning. 他在上午工作效率最高。



### 一、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. Bill eats (eat) lunch at twelve o'clock.
2. —When do you brush your teeth (tooth)?  
—Usually at seven fifteen.
3. Dave's family has (have) two showers.
4. —What time does (do) your brother get up?  
—He gets up at eight forty.
5. We always exercise (exercise) at seven o'clock in the morning.
6. —Linda, you must do your (you) homework before dinner.  
—OK, Mom.

### 二、选词填空。

always usually never

1. Jim likes to play soccer. He is always playing soccer on the playground.
2. My father doesn't have time to exercise, so he never exercises.
3. Mary is busy. She always works from day to night.
4. I usually have dinner at 6:30.
5. I can't swim, so I never go to swim.

### 三、根据要求完成句子。

1. I usually get dressed at seven o'clock. (对画线部分提问)  
What time/When do you usually get dressed ?
2. They always get up late. (改为同义句)  
They never get up early .

3. She took a shower at five thirty. (改为否定句)

She didn't take a shower at five thirty.

4. My best friend Lisa has dinner at nine o'clock.

(对画线部分提问)

What time/When does your best friend Lisa have dinner ?

5. My parents go to work at 8:00 a. m. (改为一般疑问句)

Do your parents go to work at 8:00 a. m. ?

6. John has lunch at twelve o'clock. (改为否定句)

John doesn't have lunch at twelve o'clock.

#### 四、单项选择。

( C ) 1. —        is your mother's birthday?

— On July 20th.

- A. What time
- B. How
- C. When
- D. Where

( D ) 2. I usually get dressed        6:25       

the morning.

- A. at; on
- B. in; in
- C. in; at
- D. at; in

( A ) 3. — What time does your sister        ?

— She never       .

- A. exercise; exercises
- B. exercises; exercise
- C. exercise; exercise
- D. exercises; exercises

( B ) 4. Emily doesn't need to go to school early

       Friday morning.

- A. in
- B. on
- C. at
- D. from

( C ) 5. — Which season do you like        ?

— Summer.

- A. good
- B. well
- C. best
- D. favorite

## Period 3

## Section B (1a—1e)



一、写出下列时间的两种英文表达方式。

7:30 seven thirty

half past seven

4:15 four fifteen

a quarter past four

9:45 nine forty-five

a quarter to ten

12:10 twelve ten

ten past twelve

5:50 five fifty

ten to six

二、英汉互译。

回家 go home

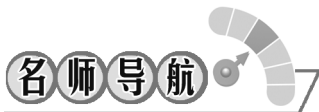
do homework 做家庭作业

run 跑步

clean my room 打扫我的房间

去睡觉 go to bed

take a walk 散步



### 1. go to school/work/bed, go home

go to school/work/bed 意为“去学校/工作/睡觉”。go 是不及物动词,后接名词时需要加介词 to;接副词时不加介词。home 可用作副词,表示“回家”的意思时,用 go home。

### 2. homework

homework 是不可数名词,意为“家庭作业”。

I often do my homework at 5 p. m. 我经常在下午 5 点做家庭作业。

She has much homework to do every day. 她每天都有很多家庭作业要做。

### 3. walk

walk 可作动词,也可作名词,意为“步行”。

My father usually walks to work. 我爸爸

通常走路上班。(作动词)

We often take a walk after dinner. 我们经常晚饭后散步。(作名词)

#### 4. clean

① clean 作动词时,意为“打扫”。

I clean the room every day. 我每天打扫房间。

② 作形容词时,意为“干净的;清洁的”。

We love our school. It's very clean. 我们爱我们的学校。它非常干净。

#### 5. 时间的表达方法

① 直接表达法

表示整点:基数词 + o'clock, o'clock 须用单数,可以省略。如:8:00→eight (o'clock); 10:00→ten (o'clock)。

表示非整点的时间:钟点(基数词) + 分钟(基数词),如:6:40→six forty。

② 间接表达法

如果分钟≤30,可用分钟(基数词) + past + 钟点(基数词)。如:4:20→twenty past four; 8:30→thirty past eight。

【提示】30分钟常用 half 表示,因此 8:30 经常这样表达:half past eight。

如果分钟>30,可用(60分钟-原分钟数) + to + (原钟点数 + 1)表示,其中 to 是介词,意思是“差”。如:8:35→twenty-five to nine; 3:55→five to four; 9:45→fifteen to ten。15分钟常用 a quarter 表示,因此 9:45 常这样表达:a quarter to ten。



一、用 quarter, to, past 写出下面时间的英文表达。

9:15 a quarter past nine

3:25 twenty-five past three

4:30 half past four

11:45 a quarter to twelve

5:40 twenty to six

8:20 twenty past eight

1:48 twelve to two

7:10 ten past seven

6:05 five past six

二、从方框中选择恰当的单词,并用其适当形式填空。(可重复选用)

get go take brush eat do clean

- I eat breakfast at home.
- They go to school from Monday to Friday.
- She takes a walk for an hour.
- Joe gets up at six o'clock.
- I take a shower at 5:30 in the afternoon.
- He doesn't eat dinner at school.
- We need to clean the classroom every day.
- I often brush my teeth at a quarter past seven.
- Mike does his homework from 6:00 to 8:00 in the afternoon.
- When do you get dressed?

三、补全对话。

A: Hi, Tina, when do you get up?

B: Always at seven o'clock.

A: 1. Do you eat breakfast at home/with your family ?

B: Yes, I do. I usually eat breakfast at half past seven with my family.

A: 2. When do you go to school ?

B: At eight o'clock in the morning.

A: 3. When do you do homework ?

B: I usually do my homework at a quarter past six.

A: 4. What about your best friend Sally? /What time does your friend Sally do homework ?

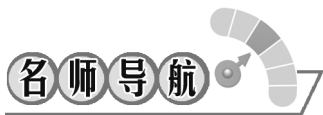
B: Sally always does her homework at half past six.



从方框中选择恰当的单词或短语,并用其适当形式填空。

quickly sometimes lots of taste early

- I usually take a shower at 6 o'clock in the evening, but sometimes at half past eight.
- My brother gets up early, so he's never late for school.
- I like to make friends, so I have lots of friends.
- Jim is good at math, so he can find the answers quickly.
- I like candy (糖果), because it tastes sweet.



### 1. time

time 作可数名词时,意为“次数;倍数”;作不可数名词时,意为“时间”。

I exercise three times a week. 我一周锻炼三次。

What time is it? 几点了?

### 2. quickly

由形容词 quick + 后缀 -ly 构成副词,意为“快地;迅速地”。

在英语中,许多副词由其形容词加后缀 -ly 构成,这种构词法非常常见。

happy(快乐的)→happily(快乐地)

heavy(沉重的)→heavily(沉重地)

healthy(健康的)→healthily(健康地)

angry(生气的)→angrily(愤怒地)

### 3. either... or...

either... or... 主要用于表示选择,意为“要么……要么……;或者……或者……”,用来

连接两个性质相同的单词或短语。

You can have either this one or that one. 你拿这个或那个都可以。

We can finish the work either this week or next week. 不是这星期就是下星期我们就可以完成这项工作。

【提示】either... or... 连接两个成分作主语时,谓语的动词通常与其靠近的主语保持一致。

Either you or I am to go. 你或我必须有人去。

Either he or you are right. 要么他对,要么你对。

### 4. lots of

【辨析】lots of, a lot of, many 与 much

在英语中,a lot of, lots of, many, much 都有“许多;大量”的意思。它们主要的区别是:

①many 与可数名词的复数形式连用。

Are there many books in the room? 房间里有很多书吗?

②much 是针对量和程度而言,只能修饰不可数名词。

Is there much milk in the bottle? 瓶子里有很多牛奶吗?

③lots of 和 a lot of 相同,是口语和书面语中最常见的用语,它们既可以修饰可数名词(相当于 many),也可以修饰不可数名词(相当于 much)。

I have lots of (=many) good books. 我有许多好书。

There's lots of (=much) bread on the table. 桌子上有很多面包。

【提示】many 和 much 经常用在疑问句和否定句中,lots of 常用在肯定句中。含 lots of 的肯定句改为否定句和疑问句时,常用 many 或 much 来替换 lots of。

I have lots of work to do today.

→I don't have much work to do today. (否定句)

→Do you have much work to do today?

(一般疑问句)

He knows lots of students.

→He doesn't know many students. (否定句)

→Does he know many students? (一般疑问句)

### 5. be good for

be good for 意为“对……有好处”。

Eating vegetables is good for your health.  
吃蔬菜对你的健康有好处。

### 6. taste

①作名词时,意为“味道”,指人品尝某食物后的感觉。也可指人的“味觉”,此时是不可数名词。

The milk has a good taste. 牛奶的味道好。

②作动词时,意为“品尝”。

You can taste the curry. 你可以尝尝咖喱。

③作系动词时,表示“吃(尝)起来有……味”,主语一般为物,后面常跟形容词作表语。

The food tastes delicious. 这食物吃起来很美味。

## 演练巡航



### 一、单项选择。

- ( B ) 1. I eat dinner \_\_\_\_\_ a quarter to six, and then I take a walk \_\_\_\_\_ an hour.  
A. in; for                      B. at; for  
C. at; on                        D. in; at
- ( D ) 2. My uncle always \_\_\_\_\_ home at 7:30 p. m.  
A. get to                        B. gets to  
C. get                            D. gets
- ( C ) 3. I don't like hamburgers. They taste \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. good                         B. well  
C. bad                            D. badly
- ( C ) 4. —When does your sister do \_\_\_\_\_ homework?

—At seven o'clock in the evening.

- A. it's                            B. it  
C. her                            D. hers

- ( A ) 5. I can buy \_\_\_\_\_ this blue sweater \_\_\_\_\_ that red skirt, because I don't have enough(足够的) money.  
A. either; or                    B. both; and  
C. neither; nor                D. and; and
- ( D ) 6. I'm very busy today. I must wash my clothes, clean the room and do some cooking, so I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ to do homework.  
A. many times                B. much times  
C. many time                  D. much time

### 二、阅读理解。

Lisa is my best friend. She lives in England. She usually gets up early, then she gets dressed and brushes her teeth quickly. At about a quarter past six, she runs for an hour. At half past seven, she takes a shower. After that she eats breakfast. At eight o'clock, she goes to school. She studies hard at school and she always helps her classmates with lessons. She has dinner at seven o'clock, and then she does homework. She usually goes to bed before nine thirty.

根据短文内容回答问题。

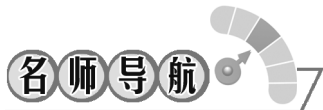
1. What does Lisa do after getting up?  
She gets dressed and brushes her teeth.
2. When does Lisa run?  
At about 6:15.
3. Does Lisa take a shower after eating breakfast?  
No, she doesn't.
4. When does Lisa do homework?  
After dinner.
5. Does she go to bed before 9:30 p. m. ?  
Yes, she does.

## Period 5 Section B (3a—Self Check)



请写一写你的日常生活安排。

My Day		
Time	Activities	
		healthy (    )
		unhealthy (    )



### 1. exercise

exercise 既可以作动词,又可以作名词,意为“锻炼;练习”。

We exercise every day. 我们每天锻炼。  
(作动词)

We do morning exercises at 10:10. 我们在10:10 做早操。(作名词)

### 2. healthy

healthy 是形容词,意为“健康的;健壮的”,由名词 health+后缀-y 构成。此种由“名词+-y”构词法构成的形容词还有:rain(雨)→rainy(下雨的);wind(风)→windy(多风的;风大的);snow(雪)→snowy(下雪的);cloud(云)→cloudy(多云的);luck(幸运)→lucky(幸运的);noise(噪音)→noisy(喧闹的;嘈杂的);taste(味道)→tasty(美味的)。

### 3. life

life 是名词,意为“生命;生活”,复数为 lives。

**【提示】**动词 live(居住)的第三人称单数也是 lives,但这两个单词的发音不同,名词复数 lives 发 [laɪvz] 音,而动词单数 lives 发 [lɪvz] 音。

### 4. have time to do sth.

have time to do sth. 意为“有时间做某事”。

I have time to do my homework. 我有时间做家庭作业。

He has no time to do his homework. 他没有时间做家庭作业。

### 5. 本单元写作指导

本单元的写作话题是描述日常活动。写作时主体时态多为一般现在时。

思路点拨:

① at+具体时间,如:at nine o'clock, at a quarter to seven;

② 表示大概时间,用 after (that/breakfast/school...), before (dinner/going to bed...);

③ 可以用 first, next, then 等表达日常活动的发生顺序;

④ 频率副词 always, usually, often, sometimes, never 等可用来表示动作发生的频率。



### 一、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

- My grandparents have lots of money, but they don't have happy lives (life).
- You need to eat vegetables for a healthy (health) body.
- Peter exercises (exercise) every day.
- Don't speak so quickly (quick). I can't follow (跟上) you.
- The apple is green, but it tastes (taste) good.
- He gets up late every day, so he doesn't have time to eat (eat) breakfast at home.
- We need some students to clean (clean) the classroom.



## 二、阅读理解。

My cousin Jessica is from America. She lives in Boston with her family. She studies in a high school. She doesn't need to get up early. She always gets up at half past seven. She has breakfast at home. At 8:30, her mother takes her to school by car. She has classes from 9:00 a.m. to 12 a.m. At noon, she has lunch at school. For lunch, she always eats hamburgers, sandwiches and salad. Sometimes she eats beef. The school is over(结束) at 3:00 p.m. Then she goes to the swimming club. Next, she goes home. After dinner, she can watch TV for half an hour. Then she does homework at 7:30. After that, she takes a shower and goes to bed.

( B ) 1. Jessica is a \_\_\_\_\_.

A. teacher

B. student

C. musician

D. doctor

( C ) 2. When does she get up?

A. At 7:45.

B. At 8:45.

C. At 7:30.

D. At 8:30.

( D ) 3. What does she sometimes eat for lunch?

A. Hamburgers.

B. Salad.

C. Sandwiches.

D. Beef.

( D ) 4. What does Jessica do after school?

A. She goes home.

B. She watches TV.

C. She plays games.

D. She goes to the swimming club.

( A ) 5. When does Jessica go to bed?

A. After doing homework.

B. Before taking a shower.

C. After watching TV.

D. Before eating dinner.

# Unit 3

## How do you get to school?

### Period 1 Section A (1a—2e)

#### 预习起航



你认识图中的交通工具吗？请写出它们的英文名称。



1. bicycle



2. boat



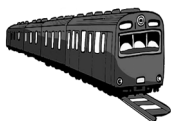
3. bus



4. plane



5. subway



6. train

#### 名师导航



#### 1. How do you get to school? 你怎样去上学？

①本句为 how 引导的特殊疑问句，用来询问交通方式。how 是疑问副词，在此句中意为“怎样；如何”。

How does your father usually go to work?  
你父亲通常怎么去上班？

②表示交通方式的常用单词或短语：

动词短语 或单词	take a/the train (bus, subway...); walk
介词短语	by train(bus,subway...); on foot; on a/the train (bus, subway...)

#### 2. get to

【辨析】get to, reach 与 arrive

单词或短语	用法
get to	多用于口语，后面如果接副词，则省略介词 to
reach	及物动词，直接接宾语，无须加介词
arrive	不及物动词，后常接介词 in 或 at

When will you get to China? = When will you arrive in China? = When will you reach China? 你将什么时候到达中国？

#### 3. How long does it take...? ……花费多长时间？

①how long 在此处意为“多长时间”，用来询问某个动作持续的时间，其谓语动词为延续性动词。

—How long will we stay here? 我们要在这儿待多久？

—About a week. 大约一周。

②It takes (sb.) some time to do sth. 是固定句型，意为“做某事花费(某人)一些时间”。其中 it 为形式主语，真正的主语是后面的动词不定式 to do sth.。

It takes him 2 hours to wash his car. 他花费了两小时洗车。

#### 4. How far is it from... to...? 从……到……有多远？

how far 意为“多远”，常用于对两地之间的距离提问。

—How far is it from here? 它离这儿有多远？

—It's about two kilometers. 大约 2000 米。



一、从方框中选择最恰当的单词或短语,并用其适当形式填空。

take the subway    how long    by taxi  
how far    hundred

- How far is it from your home to school?  
—2 kilometers.
- How long does it take him to go from here to Shanghai by plane?  
—It's about 3 hours.
- It's very convenient to take the subway to go shopping on weekends.
- Thirty and seventy is one hundred.
- I usually go to the airport by taxi.

二、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

- It usually takes him an hour to ride (ride) his bike to school.
- How does Tom get (get) to school every day?
- The old woman is ninety years (year) old now.

- How long does it take to walk (walk) to the train station?
- The trip to the airport takes (take) about 20 minutes.

三、单项选择。

- ( C ) 1. — \_\_\_\_\_ do you get to school every day?  
—By bike.  
A. When                      B. Why  
C. How                         D. What
- ( B ) 2. My friend Jack usually goes to school \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. by buses                  B. by bus  
C. by the bus                 D. by a bus
- ( D ) 3. This morning John got to school \_\_\_\_\_ the school bus, not \_\_\_\_\_ bike.  
A. on; on                      B. by; by  
C. by; on                       D. on; by
- ( A ) 4. \_\_\_\_\_ is it from your home to your school?  
A. How far                    B. How often  
C. How soon                  D. How long
- ( D ) 5. It takes about half an hour \_\_\_\_\_ to our school from my home on foot.  
A. get                          B. gets  
C. getting                      D. to get

## Period 2

## Section A (Grammar Focus—3c)



请从 B 栏中找出 A 栏中相应的答语。

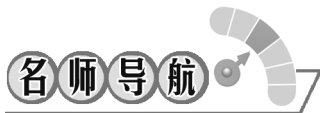
A

- ( B ) 1. Do you take the bus every day?
- ( C ) 2. How long does it take to get to school?
- ( A ) 3. How do you go home after school?
- ( E ) 4. Well, how do you get to work?
- ( D ) 5. How far is it from school to your home?

B

- I usually go home on foot.
- Yes, I do. I take it in the morning.
- It takes 15 minutes.

- It's about 5 miles.
- I take the train to work.



1. —Does Jane walk to school? 简步行去上学吗?  
—No, she doesn't. She goes by bike. 不,她不是。她骑自行车(去上学)。

这是关于询问交通方式的一般疑问句,用否定形式或肯定形式来回答。本句中主语是第三人称单数,用 does 来构成疑问句和否定回答;肯定句中动词要用第三人称单数形式。当主语不是第三人称单数时,就用助动词 do 来构成疑问句和否定回答;在肯定句中用动词原形

就可以了。

—Do they take the bus to school? 他们坐公共汽车去上学吗?

—No, they don't. They walk. 不,他们不是。他们步行。

## 2. live

live 作动词时,意为“生存;居住;过着……的生活”。

We can't live without water. 我们离开水无法生活。

Where do you live? 你住在哪里?

She lived a very hard life. 她过着十分艰苦的生活。

【拓展】live 可作形容词,意为“活着的;有生命的;现场直播的”。

This is a live fish. 这是一条活鱼。

This is a live show. 这是一个现场直播节目。

## 3. hundred

“数字+hundred+名词的复数”意为“几百个……”,“hundreds of +名词的复数”意为“成百上千的……”。

There are three hundred students in our school. 我们学校有 300 名学生。

Hundreds of students are planting trees along the river. 成百上千名学生在河边植树。

【拓展】thousand(千),million(百万),billion(十亿),与 hundred 的用法一样。



一、根据句意及首字母的提示补全单词。

1. He rides his bike to school every day.
2. It takes him about twenty minutes to walk to school.
3. My home is about 5 kilometers from our school.
4. There are two bridges on the Yellow River in Binzhou.
5. My grandma often gets up early to do exercise.
6. He takes the subway to school.

7. My father goes to work on foot every day.

8. One hundred is the number 100.

9. People in this village are helpful and friendly.

10. —Do you have a dream?

—Yes, I want to be a doctor.

二、根据汉语意思完成句子。

1. ——吉姆,你怎样来学校的?

——步行。

— How do you get to school, Jim?

—On foot.

2. 公共汽车之旅花费了大约 30 分钟。

The bus ride takes about thirty minutes.

3. 从你家到学校有多远?

How far is your home to the school?

How far is it from your home to the school?

4. My parents live far, so I go to see them

two or three times (两三次) a year.

5. It takes me one and a half (一个半) hours to clean the classroom.

三、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. It often takes (take) her 3 hours to play sports.

2. I like riding (ride) a bike to school every day.

3. How far do you live (live) from here?

4. My teacher often tells me not to talk (not talk) in class.

5. It's not easy for us to learn (learn) English well.

四、单项选择。

( C ) 1. How does she \_\_\_\_\_ Shanghai?

- A. reaches      B. arrive at  
C. get to      D. gets

( C ) 2. My sister's home is \_\_\_\_\_ from here.

- A. half an hour away on foot  
B. 10 minutes away  
C. 10 minutes' walk  
D. two hours

( A ) 3. The accident happened \_\_\_\_\_ 7:00 p. m.

\_\_\_\_\_ 9:00 p. m.

- A. from; to      B. between; to  
C. from; and      D. between; and
- ( B ) 4. — \_\_\_\_\_ does it take you from the hotel to the hospital?  
— Half an hour.  
A. How far      B. How long

- C. How many      D. How soon
- ( C ) 5. She gets up early \_\_\_\_\_ the morning but late \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday and Sunday mornings.  
A. on; in      B. on; on  
C. in; on      D. in; in

### Period 3

### Section B (1a—1e)



根据图片内容写短语。



1. bus stop



2. bus station



3. subway station



4. train station



#### 1. bus stop 与 bus station

bus stop 指在公交线路沿途设的一个个的小站。bus station 指车辆较为集中的大型车站,能中转车辆。

#### 2. stop

①意为“车站”时,用作可数名词。

There are lots of bus stops in our city. 在我们的城市里有许多公共汽车站。

②作动词时,意为“停止”,后接两种形式: stop doing sth. (停止做某事)指把正在做的事停下来; stop to do sth. (停下来去做某事)指停下一件事去做另一件事。

The baby stopped crying when he saw his mother. 那婴儿看见他妈妈时不再哭了。

We are tired. Let's stop to have a rest. 我们累了。咱们停下来休息一会儿吧。

#### 3. Mary wants to know how long it takes to get to

her grandparents' home. 玛丽想知道她到爷爷奶奶家要花费多长时间。

how long it takes to get to her grandparents' home 在句中作宾语,是宾语从句,因此用陈述语序。

I want to know where you live. 我想知道你住在哪里。

【拓展】宾语从句的结构和用法:宾语从句通常由 that(在口语或非正式文体中常省略), if, whether, where, what, who 等引导,且要用陈述语序,人称也要相应地变化。

He says (that) he is 14 years old. 他说他 14 岁了。

I don't know who he is. 我不知道他是谁。



#### 一、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

- There is (be) a river near the hotel.
- He doesn't want to do (do) his homework first.
- Every morning he leaves for (leave for) school at around half past five.
- I don't have time to clean (clean) my room from Monday to Friday.
- We are hungry. Let's stop to eat (eat) something.

#### 二、根据要求完成句子。

- It usually takes me two hours to do exercise every day. (对画线部分提问)  
How long does it usually take you to do exercise every day?
- It's five kilometers from here to the bank. (对

画线部分提问)

How far is it from here to the bank?

3. Most students take trains to school in Japan.

(对画线部分提问)

How do most students get to school in Japan?

4. Students ride bikes to school every day. (改为同义句)

Students go to school by bike every day.

5. How do you like the trip? (改为同义句)

What do you think of the trip?

What do you think about the trip?

6. Some students go to school by ropeway. It is difficult. (将两个句子合并成一句)

It is difficult for some students to go to school by ropeway.

### 三、完形填空。

Dear Mother,

Today is Sunday. I 1 go to school. I stay 2 home. I'm writing to you now. Every day, I go to school 3 seven thirty in the morning. We have four lessons in the morning. We read and write Chinese 4 school.

5 fifty-five students in my class. Four 6 them are Americans. The other students are Chinese. The Chinese people are friendly. Now I have 7 Chinese friends. My classmates are all my friends. They teach 8 Chinese. I can 9 a little Chinese now. Please 10 worry about me.

Yours,

Kate

( A )1. A. don't B. am not

C. doesn't D. isn't

( B )2. A. in B. at

C. on D. of

( C )3. A. from B. with

C. at D. in

( D )4. A. behind B. about

C. on D. at

( B )5. A. There's B. There're

C. They're D. It's

( A )6. A. of B. to

C. about D. from

( C )7. A. any B. much

C. many D. little

( D )8. A. I B. my

C. I'm D. me

( A )9. A. speak B. talk

C. tell D. say

( C )10. A. not B. no

C. don't D. can't

### 四、阅读理解。

People go to work in different ways. Some people go to work on foot because they live near their work places. Some people go to work by bike because they live farther away, or they like riding bikes. They think it's good for their health. Today more people have private (私人的) cars, so they can go to work in their cars. In the south of China, many people even go to work by boat because water is around their houses. Will people go to work by plane? I think so, if necessary. 根据短文内容,判断下列句子的正(T)误(F)。

( F )1. All people like to go to work by bike.

( T )2. Some people think it's good to go to work by bike.

( T )3. Today more people drive to work.

( F )4. In the north of China, many people go to work by boat.

( T )5. The writer thinks some people will go to work by plane if necessary.





预习课文 2b(P17)的内容, 回答下列问题。

1. Is it easy for the students in the village to get to school?

No, it isn't.

2. How do the students in the village get to school?

They get to school on a ropeway.

3. Why do they get to school on a ropeway?

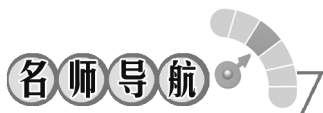
Because there is a very big river between their school and the village. And there is no bridge and the river runs too quickly for boats.

4. Does Liangliang like his school? Why?

Yes, he does. Because he loves to play with his classmates and he loves his teacher.

5. What's the villagers' dream?

Their dream is to have a bridge.



### 1. Crossing the River to School 过河去上学

cross 是动词, 意为“横过; 越过”。

【辨析】cross, across 与 through

单词	词性和用法	例句
cross	动词	Let's cross the road now! 现在我们过马路吧!
across	介词或副词, 着重指从物体表面的一边穿到另一边	Let's go across the road now! 现在我们过马路吧!
through	介词或副词, 着重指从空间一头纵穿到另一头	Go through the park. 穿过公园。

### 2. For many students, it is easy to get to school. 对许多学生来说, 到校是容易的。

①for 是介词, 表示对象, 意为“就……而言; 对于”。

For the kids, the weekend was interesting. 对于孩子们来说, 这个周末很有趣。

②本句为“*It's + adj. + (for sb.) to do sth.*”结构, 意为“(对某人来说)做某事是……的”。其中 *It* 作形式主语, 后面的动词不定式短语 *to get to school* 是句子真正的主语。英语中, 当动词不定式短语或动名词作主语时, 谓语动词通常用单数形式; 动词不定式作主语时, 常用 *it* 作形式主语, 将动词不定式放在后面。

*It's easy to get to school. = To get to school is easy.* 到校是容易的。

*It's good for our health to drink more milk. = Drinking more milk is good for our health.* 多喝牛奶对我们的健康有好处。

### 3. One 11-year-old boy... 一个 11 岁的男孩……

11-year-old 是由“基数词 + 名词 + 形容词”构成的复合形容词, 常用来作定语。三个词之间用连字符连接, 中间的名词必须用单数。

*She is a seven-year-old girl.* 她是一个 7 岁的女孩。

*It's a 300-meter-long bridge.* 这是一座 300 米长的桥。

### 4. He is like a father to me. 他对我来说就像父亲一样。

like 此处用作介词, 用法如下:

(表示样子) 像; 像……一样	<i>He looks like Father Christmas.</i> 他看起来像圣诞老人。
(表示行为) 如同……一样	<i>She ran like the wind.</i> 她跑得像一阵风。
(表示列举) 比如; 例如	<i>We should eat more healthy food like apples, milk and fish.</i> 我们应该多吃像苹果、牛奶和鱼一类的健康食物。
(询问意见)……怎么样?	<i>What are Dan's parents like?</i> 丹的父母是怎样的人?



### 一、单项选择。

- ( C ) 1. Jeff goes to work \_\_\_\_\_ and his wife goes to work \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. by car; on bike  
B. by a car; on a bike  
C. by car; on her bike  
D. by his car; in her bike
- ( B ) 2. He usually gets to school by bike, \_\_\_\_\_ he sometimes walks.
- A. and                      B. but  
C. so                         D. or
- ( D ) 3. — \_\_\_\_\_ do you live from your school?  
— About 10 minutes' walk.
- A. How many  
B. How long  
C. How soon  
D. How far
- ( A ) 4. Our holiday is coming. Two \_\_\_\_\_ students in our school will go hiking.
- A. hundred                B. hundreds  
C. hundred of            D. hundreds of
- ( C ) 5. I have a \_\_\_\_\_ sister.
- A. 9-years-old            B. 9 years old  
C. 9-year-old             D. 9 year-old

### 二、根据汉语意思完成句子。

1. 你是步行还是骑自行车?  
Do you walk or ride a bike?
2. 有一条非常大的河在他们的学校和村庄之间。  
There is a very big river between their school and the village.
3. 他们的梦想能成真吗?  
Can their dream come true ?

### 三、阅读理解。

Mr. Brown lives on Green Street now. He wants to send a postcard to his pen pal in Toronto, but he doesn't know where the post office is. "Which is the way to the post office?" he asks his new neighbor Joe. "I want to send a postcard to Toronto." "The post office is quite far from here," answers Joe. "If you only want to post some letters or postcards, you needn't go to the post office. You can put them into a mailbox down the street."

- ( C ) 1. Where does Mr. Brown live now?
- A. He lives on Center Street.  
B. He lives in Toronto.  
C. He lives on Green Street.  
D. He lives in a post office.
- ( B ) 2. Where does Mr. Brown want to go?
- A. A pen pal's house.  
B. A post office.  
C. A mailbox.  
D. Toronto.
- ( D ) 3. What does Mr. Brown want to do in the post office?
- A. He wants to go to the mailbox.  
B. He wants to buy some stamps.  
C. He wants to know the way to Toronto.  
D. He wants to send a postcard.
- ( C ) 4. Where is the post office?
- A. On Green Street.  
B. In Toronto.  
C. We don't know.  
D. In the neighborhood.
- ( A ) 5. Where can Mr. Brown post the postcard in the neighborhood?
- A. The mailbox on the street.  
B. The mailbox in the post office.  
C. The post office.  
D. His house.

## Period 5 Section B (3a—Self Check)



根据你的实际情况回答下列问题。

1. When do you leave home?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. How do you get to school?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. How far is it from your home to school?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. How long does it take you to get to school?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Do you like the trip to school?  
\_\_\_\_\_



### 1. leave

离开	He leaves home early every day. 他每天早早地离开家。
忘了带; 落下	I left my bag at home. 我把书包落在家里了。
剩下	Hurry up! There's little time left. 快点! 几乎没有时间了。

【辨析】leave 与 leave for

单词或短语	用法	例句
leave	后跟的地点为出发地	He left Beijing yesterday. 昨天他离开了北京。
leave for	后跟的地点为目的地	He will leave for Shanghai tomorrow. 明天他将动身去上海。

### 2. 本单元写作指导

本单元的写作话题是上学的方式。

实例分析:

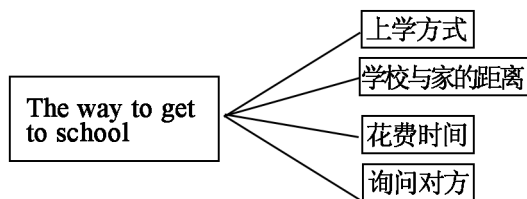
假如你叫李华, 你的美国笔友 Tom 想了解你的上学方式。请你根据提示, 给他写一封电子邮件, 告诉他你的上学方式。

提示:

- ① How do you get to school?
- ② How far is it and how long does it take?

思路点拨:

- ① 提示结构图



- ② 根据图示写出相关联的句子

(上学方式) I usually get to school by bus.

(学校与家的距离) It's about 5 kilometers from home to school.

(花费时间) It takes me about 20 minutes to get to school.

(询问对方) How do you get to school?



一、根据句意及首字母的提示补全单词。

1. Everyone hopes that their dreams will come true.
2. Be careful to look both ways before you cross the street.
3. There is a library between the shop and the bank.
4. They will build a bridge over the river.
5. Most people are afraid of snakes.

二、根据所给的汉语完成句子。

1. The students have to go on a ropeway (滑铁索) to school.
2. He is an 8-year-old (一个 8 岁的) boy.
3. —Would you like to come to my party?  
—I'd love to, but I'm afraid (我恐怕) I can't because of much homework.
4. Mr. Green will leave for (动身去) Paris in two weeks.

5. I want to be a doctor. I believe my dream will come true (实现).

### 三、书面表达。

根据预习起航中的问题提示,写一篇关于你每天上学的方式的文章。

要求:1. 文章须包含所给信息,可适当发挥;

2. 80 个词左右。

Thanks for your last email. Let me tell you how I get to school every day. Well, I usually leave my home at about 7:30 and walk to the bus stop. The school bus usually comes at about 7:50

a. m. My school is about 20 kilometers from my home. It takes about 40 minutes to get there by bus. The bus ride is never boring because I always talk to my classmates. Sometimes, my father drives me to school if I get up late.

What about you? How do you get to school every day?

---

---

---

---

---

# Unit

# 4

## Don't eat in class.

### Period 1

### Section A (1a—2d)

#### 预习起航



想一想你在学校哪些事可以做, 哪些事不可以做, 并填写在下面的表格中。

I can	I can't
play sports after class	be late for class
run on the playground	eat in the classroom
read in the library	listen to music in class
talk with classmates after class	fight

#### 名师导航



#### 1. arrive

arrive 是不及物动词, 意为“到达”, 后常接介词 in 或 at, 且 in 后接大地方, at 后接小地方; 若后接 here, there, home 等地点副词, 则不需要介词。

You must arrive at the airport two hours early. 你必须提前两个小时到达机场。

Mike will arrive in Beijing at ten o'clock. 迈克将在 10 点到达北京。

Can you arrive here before 9 a. m. tomorrow? 你明天早上 9 点之前能到这儿吗?

#### 2. on time

on time 是介词短语, 意为“准时”。

You should get there on time. 你应该准时到达那里。

【拓展】in time 及时 all the time 一直 at the same time 同时

#### 3. wear

wear 意为“穿; 戴”, 其宾语可以是表示衣物、鞋帽、首饰、发型、眼镜等的名词, 强调穿(戴)的状态。

He wears a pair of glasses. 他戴着一副眼镜。

She is wearing a beautiful dress today. 她今天穿着一条漂亮的连衣裙。

#### 4. bring 与 take

bring 意为“带来; 取来”, 指从别处将某物或某人带到说话者所在的地点; take 意为“拿走; 带走”, 指把某物或某人从说话者身边带走。

Don't forget to bring your homework tomorrow. 明天别忘了带你的作业来。

I'll take her to hospital. 我将带她去医院。

#### 演练巡航



一、根据句意及首字母的提示补全单词。

- We must follow the school rules.
- Let's go and play outside.
- Can you bring CDs of Jay Chou here tomorrow?
- The two boys are fighting with each other.
- There is no one in the classroom. It's very quiet.
- Don't eat in the classroom.  
—Sorry, Miss Clark.
- I like listening to music. It's very relaxing.
- We must wear a school uniform at school every day.

9. We can't eat in the classroom, but we can eat in the dining hall.
10. It's very important for us to learn English well.

### 二、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. Don't be (be) late for the meeting, please.
2. He has to arrive (arrive) there before ten o'clock.
3. Tom with his father often swims (swim) in the afternoon.
4. My uncle can't drive (drive) a car.
5. She doesn't like (not like) playing basketball.
6. Don't let her talk (talk) here.

### 三、单项选择。

- ( A ) 1. We can't \_\_\_\_\_ music in class.  
A. listen to      B. listen  
C. hear            D. hear from
- ( C ) 2. At 12:00 last night, we arrived \_\_\_\_\_ the train station.  
A. for              B. to  
C. at                D. in
- ( D ) 3. Daisy, you \_\_\_\_\_ get to the station to meet Mr. Green by 10 o'clock, OK?

- A. will              B. can  
C. are going to    D. must

- ( A ) 4. Nick is never late for work. He always gets to the office \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. on time          B. in time  
C. at times          D. sometimes
- ( B ) 5. In our school, we don't have to \_\_\_\_\_ the uniform.  
A. put on            B. wear  
C. have on          D. dress
- ( C ) 6. —Let's \_\_\_\_\_ for a walk.  
—Good idea.  
A. to go             B. going  
C. go                D. goes
- ( A ) 7. Those students live far away from their school. They \_\_\_\_\_ get up early every day.  
A. have to          B. will  
C. can                D. may
- ( A ) 8. —\_\_\_\_\_ run in the hallways.  
—Sorry, Miss Wang.  
A. Don't            B. No  
C. Not                D. Can't

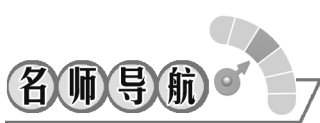
## Period 2

## Section A (Grammar Focus—3c)



写出你们学校的《学生守则》中的部分内容。

1. Don't arrive late for class.
2. Don't run in the hallways.
3. Don't eat in the classroom. You must eat in the dining hall.
4. Don't listen to music in class.
5. Don't fight.



### 1. fight

fight 用作动词时,意为“打架;战斗”;也可作名词,意为“打架”。常用的结构:fight with sb. = have a fight with sb. (与某人打架)。

I don't want to fight with anyone. = I don't want to have a fight with anyone. 我不想和任何人打架。

### 2. must

must 是情态动词,意为“必须”,后跟动词原形。must 用于描述某项规定时,语气较为强烈。

We must wear the school uniform every



Monday. 我们每周一都必须穿校服。

【拓展】含情态动词 must 的句式

否定句	在 must 后加 not, 可缩写为 mustn't, 意为“不可以;禁止”, 表示语气较为强烈的禁止
一般疑问句	把 must 提前, 即“Must I/we...?”, 肯定回答要用“Yes, you must.”, 否定回答要用“No, you needn't/don't have to.”

I must go home now. 我现在必须回家。

You mustn't take photos here. 你不可以在这里拍照。

—Must I do my homework now, Mom?  
妈妈, 我必须现在做作业吗?

—No, you needn't. You can do it tomorrow.  
不, 你不必。你可以明天做。

3. have/has to

have/has to 是情态动词, 表示“必须;不得不”, 后跟动词原形。其否定形式为 don't/doesn't have to, 意为“不必”; 变为一般疑问句或特殊疑问句时, 要借助助动词 do 或 does。

—Does Linda have to stay at home on weekends? 周末琳达必须待在家里吗?

—Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't. 是的, 她必须(待在家里)。/ 不, 她不必(待在家里)。

【辨析】have to 与 must

单词或短语	意义	用法	时态	否定形式
have to	必须	强调客观需要	用于多种时态, 有人称和数的变化	don't have to = needn't, 意为“不必”
must	必须	强调主观看法	只用于一般现在时	must not = mustn't, 意为“禁止;不许”

My mother is ill. I have to look after her.  
我妈妈生病了, 我必须照顾她。

You must be on time for class. 你必须准时上课。

You don't have to go there now. 你现在不必去那儿。

You mustn't smoke here. 禁止在这儿吸烟。



一、根据句意及首字母或汉语的提示完成句子。

- Don't arrive late for school. We must be on time.
- Don't be late for class. That's very important (重要的).
- Can we listen to music in the classroom?  
—No, we can't. But we can listen to music outside (在外面).
- We must be quiet (安静的) in the library.

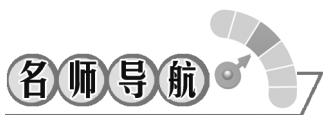
二、根据要求完成句子。

- He has to clean the classroom. (改为一般疑问句)  
Does he have to clean the classroom?
- You must clean the classroom every day. (改为同义句)  
You have to clean the classroom every day.
- You can't be late for school. (改为否定祈使句)  
Don't be late for school.
- We have to get up before 6:10 every morning. (改为否定句)  
We don't have to get up before 6:10 every morning.
- You must be on time for work. (改为同义句)  
You mustn't be late for work.



你家里有哪些家规？请写下来。

1. Get up early and make my bed.
2. Don't leave the dirty dishes in the kitchen.
3. Go to bed before 10:00.
4. Read a book before watching TV.
5. I must do my homework after school.



### 1. on school nights

on school nights 意为“在上学日的晚上”，介词 on 意为“在……的时刻(表示时间)”。

I usually go swimming on Sundays. 我通常星期天去游泳。

【提示】具体到某一天的上午、下午或晚上应用介词 on。

Tom usually goes fishing on Sunday morning. 汤姆通常在星期天上午去钓鱼。

### 2. practice

practice 用作动词时，意为“练习”，后面可以接名词、代词或 v.-ing 形式，不接动词不定式。

I must practice the guitar every day. 我必须每天练习弹吉他。

The boy often practices playing football. 这个男孩经常练习踢足球。

【拓展】practice 可以作名词，意为“练习”。

### 3. help

help 用作动词时，常用于以下结构：help sb. (帮助某人), help sb. (to) do sth. (帮助某人做某事), help sb. with sth. (在某事上帮助某人)。

I can't make a kite. Can you help me? 我不会做风筝。你能帮帮我吗？

He often helps the old (to) cross the road. 他经常帮助老年人过马路。

My sister often helps me with my math. 我姐姐经常帮助我学习数学。

【提示】help sb. (to) do sth. 这一结构中的动词不定式中的 to 或不定式符号 to 可以省略。



### 一、根据要求完成句子。

1. Wear hats in class. (改为否定句)  
Don't wear hats in class.
2. She has to wash the dishes. (改为一般疑问句)  
Does she have to wash the dishes?
3. No talking in the reading room. (改为同义句)  
Don't talk in the reading room.
4. You can listen to music in the music room or outside. (对画线部分提问)  
Where can I listen to music?
5. I have to go to bed at 11:00. (对画线部分提问)  
What time/When do you have to go to bed?

### 二、单项选择。

- ( D ) 1. Mary practices \_\_\_\_\_ every day.  
A. dance      B. to dance  
C. dances      D. dancing
- ( B ) 2. —Jim, \_\_\_\_\_ watch TV too much.  
—OK.  
A. mustn't      B. don't  
C. won't      D. can't
- ( C ) 3. Look at the school rule. It \_\_\_\_\_, “Don't eat in class.”  
A. write      B. writing  
C. says      D. saying
- ( D ) 4. I have to clean my room \_\_\_\_\_ every Sunday.  
A. on      B. in  
C. at      D. 不填
- ( A ) 5. Li Lan often helps her sister \_\_\_\_\_ English.

A. study      B. with study

C. studying      D. studies

( C ) 6. — \_\_\_\_\_ I take some photos in the hall?

—No, you \_\_\_\_\_.

A. Can; don't

B. Must; mustn't

C. Can; can't

D. Do; don't

三、从方框中选择恰当的单词,并用其适当形式填空。

rule practice join after lucky  
for on read before early

Emily has to follow so many rules. She has to do her homework after school. She can't go out on school nights. She has to wash the dishes after dinner, and then she can watch TV for half an hour. She likes reading. She usually reads at night. She has to be in bed before ten o'clock because she has to get up early the next morning. She joins a music club. She has to practice playing the guitar every day. She doesn't think she's lucky.

四、完形填空。

There 1 lots of rules at Selina's school.

She agrees with(同意) some of 2. For example(例如), they can't arrive 3 school late, they can't run in the hallways, and they can't eat in class. All 4 rules are OK because they're reasonable(合理的).

But there are 5 rules Selina doesn't agree with. For example, at her school they have to 6 the school uniform, and they must keep

their hair short. Their teacher says that can make them look smart(聪明的). At school, they can't listen to music in art class. Selina doesn't agree with this rule. She 7 listening to music in art class is OK.

Selina also has to 8 some rules at home. For example, if she wants to watch TV, she has to finish her homework first. And she can't go out with her friends 9 school nights, that is, from Monday to Friday. She also has to clean her room 10 week. Luckily, she doesn't have to take out the trash(垃圾). She doesn't like it.

( D ) 1. A. have

B. has

C. is

D. are

( B ) 2. A. this

B. them

C. that

D. it

( A ) 3. A. at

B. to

C. in

D. for

( C ) 4. A. this

B. that

C. these

D. it

( D ) 5. A. many

B. lots of

C. few

D. some

( D ) 6. A. put on

B. dress

C. have

D. wear

( B ) 7. A. knows

B. thinks

C. understands

D. finds

( A ) 8. A. follow

B. make

C. take

D. learn

( A ) 9. A. on

B. in

C. at

D. with

( C ) 10. A. one

B. next

C. every

D. last

## Period 4

## Section B (2a—2c)



预习课本 P23 2b 的文章,回答下列问题。

1. Why is Molly unhappy?

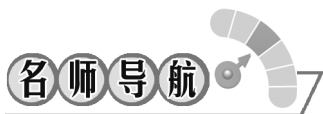
Because there are too many rules for her.

2. Why does Molly have to run to school?

Because she can't be late for school.

3. What time does Molly have to go to bed?

Before 10:00.



### 1. too many

too many 意为“太多”，修饰可数名词。

【辨析】too many, too much 与 much too

短语	用法
too many	修饰可数名词的复数
too much	修饰不可数名词
much too	修饰形容词或副词

There are too many people in the classroom. 教室里人太多了。

Don't eat too much meat. 不要吃太多的肉。

It's much too cold today. 今天太冷了。

### 2. either

either 是副词，意为“也”，常用于否定句句末。

【辨析】either, also 与 too

either	用于否定句，常置于句末，可用逗号与主句隔开
also	较为正式，一般用于肯定句，常置于 be 动词、助动词或情态动词之后，实义动词前
too	多用于口语，一般用于肯定句，常置于句末

I don't want to go shopping, and Tom doesn't, either. 我不想去购物，汤姆也不想去。

Jack also likes playing football. 杰克也喜欢踢足球。

You should clean your room, too. 你也应该打扫你的房间。

### 3. relax

relax 是动词，意为“放松；休息”。

【辨析】relax, relaxing 与 relaxed

relax	动词，意为“放松；休息”
relaxing	形容词，意为“令人放松的”，用来形容物
relaxed	形容词，意为“感到放松的”，用来形容人

The old man relaxes himself by walking every day. 那位老人每天通过走路放松。

The music is really relaxing. 这音乐真是令人放松。

Linda is relaxed in the swimming pool. 琳

达在游泳池里感到很放松。

### 4. strict

strict 是形容词，意为“严格的；严厉的”，常用的结构有 be strict in sth. (对某事要求严格), be strict with sb. (对某人要求严格)。

Our English teacher is very strict with us. 我们的英语老师对我们要求很严格。

My mother is strict in her work. 我妈妈对她的工作很严格。



#### 一、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. She helps her mother do (do) the housework.
2. After dinner, I can't relax (relax), because I have to do my homework.
3. Tom practices playing (play) the guitar every afternoon.
4. You mustn't be noisy (noise) in class.
5. There are too many (much) rules at school.
6. Have fun swimming (swim) in the pool.

#### 二、单项选择。

- ( C ) 1. —Don't eat in the classroom.  
—      , Miss Clark.  
A. Thanks                      B. Really  
C. Sorry                         D. Fine
- ( A ) 2. We must        the school rules.  
A. follow                        B. take  
C. bring                         D. write
- ( D ) 3. Her mother is very strict        her.  
A. at                              B. on  
C. in                              D. with
- ( B ) 4. —Why are you so tired these days?  
—Well, I have        work to do.  
A. too many                    B. too much  
C. much too                    D. many
- ( C ) 5. —I feel boring. I can't go out on school nights.  
—I can't go out,       .  
A. also                         B. too  
C. either                        D. or



你父母为你制定了哪些家规？请将相关信息填写在下面的表格中。

My family rules
I can
I can't
I must
Don't



### 1. keep

keep 是动词，意为“保持”。keep sb./sth. + 形容词，意为“使某人或某物保持某种状态”，是“keep + 宾语 + 宾语补足语”结构，其中宾语补足语通常由形容词、副词或介词短语等充当。

Keep the children away from the fire, please. 请让孩子们远离火。

Keep your room clean. 保持你的房间干净。

### 2. learn

learn 是动词，意为“学习；学会”，常用的结构：learn to do sth. (学习做某事)，learn from... (向……学习)，learn about (学习……)。

I want to learn to play the guitar. 我想学习弹吉他。

You should learn from Jane. 你应该向简学习。

I want to learn about Chinese history. 我想学习中国历史。

### 3. have fun

have fun 意为“玩得开心”，常用的结构：have fun (in) doing sth. 意为“开心地做某事”。

Boys and girls, please come and have fun! 孩子们，请过来尽情地玩吧！

We always have great fun at parties. 聚会上我们总是玩得很开心。

The boys are having fun playing in the water. 那些男孩正在水里玩得很开心。

### 4. 本单元写作指导

本单元的写作话题是 rules, 即谈论规章制度。我们经常接触到的有 family rules (家规) 和 school rules (校规), 这两种规则都和大家的日常生活息息相关。在写作时可以根据自己情况发表自己的看法。常用表达句型:

I/We can't... .

I/We can... .

I/We have to... .

I/We don't have to... .

#### 【佳句锦囊】

There are too many rules. 有太多的规则。

I think the rules are too strict. 我认为这些规则太严格了。

We must follow the rules. 我们必须遵守这些规则。



#### 一、根据句意及首字母的提示补全单词。

- Don't fight \_\_\_\_\_. You two should be friendly to each other.
- All the students should follow the school rules \_\_\_\_\_.
- Don't stay out \_\_\_\_\_. It's too cold. Come in!
- Parents are sometimes strict \_\_\_\_\_, but they make rules to help us.

#### 二、根据要求完成句子。

- You can't eat in the classroom. (改为祈使句)  
Don't eat in the classroom.
- Maria has to practice the piano on Sundays. (改为一般疑问句)  
Does Maria have to practice the piano on Sundays?

3. Students can run and talk loudly in the hallways.

(改为否定句)

Students can't run or talk loudly in the hallways.

4. They have to clean the classroom. (对画线部分提问)

What do they have to do ?

5. Tony has to go to bed before 11 o'clock. (改为否定句)

Tony doesn't have to go to bed before 11 o'clock.

### 三、书面表达。

根据“预习起航”中的表格内容，以 *My family rules* 为题描述你的家规，并表达你的看法。

- 要求：1. 可根据表格中的信息适当发挥；
- 2. 60 个词左右。

### *My family rules*

There are many rules in my family. I have to get up at 6:30 every morning, because I must go to school at 7:15 a. m. I can't eat outside. I can't watch TV on school nights. I must be back home by 12:00 at noon and by 6:00 in the afternoon. These rules are strict. But I think my parents make rules to help me. I must follow them. Do you have family rules at home? Can you tell me?

---



---



---



---



---



---

# Unit 5

## Why do you like pandas?

### Period 1

### Section A (1a—2d)

#### 预习起航



请在下表中选择你认为最能描述下列动物的形容词。

interesting friendly cute scary(吓人的)  
lazy(懒惰的) smart(聪明的) shy kind  
beautiful small strong

tiger \_\_\_\_\_ giraffe \_\_\_\_\_  
elephant \_\_\_\_\_ panda \_\_\_\_\_  
dog \_\_\_\_\_ pig \_\_\_\_\_  
lion \_\_\_\_\_ koala \_\_\_\_\_  
sheep \_\_\_\_\_ bird \_\_\_\_\_

#### 名师导航



#### 1. see, look 与 watch

单词	用法	例句
see	强调看的结果,意为“看见;看到”	Can you see the words on the blackboard? 你能看见黑板上的字吗?
look	指集中注意力看,是有意的,强调看的动作。单独使用时,用来引起对方的注意;若跟宾语,则要 and at 连用	Look! There is a new book on the desk. 看!桌子上有一本新书。Look at the blackboard, please. 请看黑板。

(续表)

单词	用法	例句
watch	强调专注地看,有欣赏的意思,常用于看电视、看球赛等	Do you watch TV at night? 你晚上看电视吗?

#### 2. kind of

kind of 意为“有点儿;稍微”,是非常口语化的表达,常用于修饰形容词。

The dog is kind of cute. 这只狗有点儿可爱。

【拓展】kind 是可数名词,意为“种类”。如:a kind of(一种);all kinds of(各种各样的);many kinds of(许多种)。

#### 3. south

south 用作名词时,意为“南;南方;南部”,如:a city in the south(南方的一个城市)。用作形容词时,意为“南方的”,如:South China(华南)。

【拓展】east(东方) north(北方) west(西方)

#### 演练巡航



一、根据句意及首字母的提示补全单词。

- There are lots of animals in the zoo. I like tigers best.
- Taylor Swift is my favorite singer. She is very beautiful.
- It is summer in China, but in Australia it is winter.
- I have a pet dog. Its name is Diudiu.
- Lily is really smart. She is good at all the subjects.



## 二、单项选择。

- ( C ) 1. —I guess it is \_\_\_\_\_ elephant.  
—No, I don't think so. It looks like \_\_\_\_\_ lion.  
A. a; an                      B. an; an  
C. an; a                        D. a; a
- ( D ) 2. Most of us like pandas very much. We think they are \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. lazy                        B. difficult  
C. scary                       D. cute
- ( A ) 3. I think your pet is \_\_\_\_\_ lazy. He likes sleeping very much.  
A. kind of                    B. kind  
C. kinds of                   D. all kinds of
- ( B ) 4. —\_\_\_\_\_ do you like the tigers?  
—Because they are very strong.  
A. What                      B. Why  
C. Where                      D. How

- ( A ) 5. —Let's \_\_\_\_\_ the pandas first.  
—Good idea.  
A. watch                      B. to watch  
C. see                         D. to see

## 三、根据汉语意思完成句子。

1. 我不喜欢狮子,它们有点恐怖。  
I don't like lions; they are kind of scary.
2. 我来自澳大利亚。我会说英语。  
I am from Australia. I can speak English.
3. 你为什么不喜欢去动物园?  
Why don't you like to go to the zoo?
4. 书店里有各种各样的书。  
There are all kinds of books in the bookstore.
5. 我的宠物狗可以用两条腿走路。  
My pet dog can walk on its two legs.

## Period 2

## Section A (Grammar Focus—3c)

### 预习起航



预习 P27 Grammar Focus, 完成以下对话。

1. — Why do you like pandas?  
— Because they're kind of interesting.
2. —Why does John like koalas?  
— Because they're very cute.
3. —Why do you like tigers?  
—Because they're really scary.
4. — Where are lions from?  
—They are from South Africa.

### 名师导航



#### 1. be from

be from 意为“来自”。

He was from a very poor country. 他来自一个非常贫穷的国家。

【拓展】come from 意为“来自”。

He came from a very poor country. = He was from a very poor country. 他来自一个非常贫穷的国家。

#### 2. because

because 是连词,意为“因为”,其后接句子。

He was late for school yesterday, because he got up very late. 昨天他上学迟到了,因为他起床很晚。

【拓展】because of 是介词短语,意为“由于”,其后接代词、名词、名词词组、动名词。

He can't come because of the heavy rain. 由于下大雨,他没有来。

#### 3. Why do you like pandas? 你为什么喜欢熊猫?

这是一个由疑问副词 why 引导的特殊疑问句,用来询问原因,一般用 because 引导的句子来回答。

## 演练巡航



### 一、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

- Let's go (go) to see the tigers first.
- Where does the panda come (come) from?
- Why don't you like taking (take) a walk?
- What does your sister want to do (do)?
- I don't like scary (scare) movie; they are boring.

### 二、根据要求完成下列句子。

- Where does the panda come from? (改为同义句)  
Where is the panda from ?
- I like giraffes because they are really tall. (对画线部分提问)  
Why do you like giraffes?
- Why don't you see the pandas first? (改为同义句)  
Let us see the pandas first.

- I don't like tigers. Tigers are scary. (将两个句子合并成一句)  
I don't like tigers because they are scary.

- John comes from America. (对画线部分提问)

Where does John come from?

### 三、选词填空。

animals	south	sleep
zoo	kind of	lazy

- Animals are our friends; we can't kill them.
- I think English is kind of difficult. Do you think so?
- Children sleep 8 hours a day. It is good for their health.
- Don't be lazy, please. Go and wash your face, OK?
- It rains a lot in south, and the countryside is very beautiful.
- I like to go to the zoo; the animals there are really cute.

## Period 3

## Section B (1a-1d)

## 预习起航



根据表格内容仿照例句编对话。

animals	reasons
elephants	smart
pandas	cute
koalas	friendly
lions	strong

Model: —Why do you like elephants?  
—I like elephants because they're smart.

- —
- —
- —

## 名师导航



### 1. friendly

friendly 是形容词,意为“友好的”,由名词 friend(朋友)加后缀-ly 构成。

【拓展】① be friendly to sb. 意为“对某人友好”,相当于 be kind to sb.。

My classmates are all friendly to me. 我的同学都对我很友好。

② be friendly with sb. 意为“和某人关系好”。

The classmates in our class are friendly with each other. 我们班上的同学之间关系都很好。

### 2. shy

shy 是形容词,意为“害羞的;羞怯的;腼腆”。

的”，在句中作表语或定语。

She is a shy girl. 她是一个害羞的女孩。  
(作定语)

I like pandas. They are shy. 我喜欢大熊猫。  
它们很羞怯。(作表语)

### 3. 常见的描述动物的形容词

smart 聪明的 beautiful 美丽的 lazy 懒惰的  
small 小的 friendly 友好的 cute 可爱的  
scary 吓人的 shy 羞怯的



#### 一、单项选择。

- ( C ) 1. —Who is your math teacher?  
—The woman \_\_\_\_\_ long hair over there.  
A. has                      B. of  
C. with                      D. on
- ( A ) 2. One of the animals \_\_\_\_\_ from South Africa.  
A. is                          B. am  
C. are                         D. be
- ( A ) 3. We mustn't buy the cups \_\_\_\_\_ trees.  
A. made of                  B. make  
C. make of                  D. made
- ( B ) 4. The Great Wall is the \_\_\_\_\_ of China.  
A. dream                    B. symbol  
C. flag                        D. luck
- ( A ) 5. —Let's go to the zoo this afternoon.  
—\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. That sounds good  
B. Thank you  
C. You're welcome  
D. No problem

#### 二、根据汉语意思完成句子。

1. 请不要砍伐树木。  
Please don't cut down the trees.
2. 我迷路了, 不知道我现在在哪里。  
I get lost and I don't know where I am now.
3. 我能游很长时间。

I can swim for a long time .

4. 雨下得很大, 我们处于危险当中。

It's raining hard. We are in danger .

5. 这些漂亮的裙子都是用纸做的。

These beautiful dresses are all made of paper.

#### 三、阅读理解。

Do you love dogs? Do you love to watch fashion shows? Dog owners in America have a fashion show for their dogs on the Times Square in New York. It is interesting. Many people watch it in the square.

It's not easy to dress dogs. The dog owners must know their dogs very well. First, they must learn about the sizes of their dogs' bodies, their colors and their hobbies. Then the dog owners can make the clothes for their dogs.

The well-dressed dogs walk on the catwalk. Some of them are really smart, and some are funny. At last, an English dog wins first prize. It looks like a taxi in the special costume. People all think it's the most lovely one.

- ( D ) 1. This show is about \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. fashion  
B. dogs  
C. dog owners  
D. dogs with fashion
- ( C ) 2. The dog owners in \_\_\_\_\_ have a fashion show for their dogs.  
A. China                      B. England  
C. America                    D. Australia
- ( A ) 3. What's the Chinese meaning of the underlined word "catwalk"?  
A. 猫步                      B. 猫爪  
C. T型舞台                  D. 走路
- ( B ) 4. People like the winner because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. it wears a special skirt  
B. it is very lovely  
C. its owner likes it very much  
D. it looks like a car



阅读下面关于大象背景知识的短文,补充短文中所缺的单词。

Elephants are a very important part of Thailand's history. They are symbols of power (权利) and peace. They are strong and gentle at the same time. But many years ago, they also did important work. They 1. helped the Thai people get wood from their forests(森林).

In the past, the Thai people cut down a lot of trees. In 1989, the government made a law to 2. stop this. They wanted to keep the trees in the forest. Today, the Thai people cut down only a few trees. Some elephants work in the forest to help them. The forests are in the mountains, where many trucks and machines 3. cannot go up. But elephants can. Men cut down the trees, and the elephants pick up the trees and carry them to the river. Then the trees float down the river to other men, who cut the trees into pieces of wood.

In the past, elephants were trained for many years to learn 4. how to work. Each elephant had its own trainer(训练者), also called mahout. A mahout spent his whole life with the same elephant. Fathers wanted their sons to be mahouts, too. Mahouts bought baby elephants for their sons. First, the baby elephant stayed with its mother. 5. When the elephant was three years old, it lived with the boy. The boy and the elephant grew up together. The boy took care of the elephant. They learned a lot about each other.



### 1. be made of

be made of + 材料,意为“由……制成”。

The model plane is made of steel. 这个飞机模型是钢做成的。

类似短语还有: be made from + 材料; be made out of + 材料; be made in + 地点; be made by + 人。

【辨析】be made of, be made from 与 be made out of

be made of 指的是从成品看得出原材料, be made from 指的是从成品看不出原材料, be made out of 强调的是成品的内容来自原材料。

This house is made out of recycled materials. 这个房子是用回收材料做成的。

My new dress is made of silk. 我的新裙子是丝绸做成的。

Do you know paper is made from wood? 你知道纸是由木头制成的吗?

### 2. save

save 是动词,意为“救;救助”,如: save one's life(挽救某人的生命)。

【拓展】save 还可译为“保存;节约”,如: save money(存钱), save time(节约时间)。

### 3. over

over 是介词,意为“超越;多于;在……上方”等。

He must be over thirty years old. 他肯定超过 30 岁了。

There is a light over the table. 桌子上有一盏灯。



### 一、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

- Lily is one of the students (student) in this group.
- Chinese people are friendly (friend); they always say “nihao” to you.
- Tom likes drawing pictures, and he can draw it well (good).

4. Don't kill (kill) animals; they are our friends.

5. I like cookies made (make) of milk.

## 二、单项选择。

( B ) 1. Young people \_\_\_\_\_ 18 years old can drive cars in our country.

- A. with                      B. over  
C. on                          D. of

( C ) 2. I \_\_\_\_\_ my way home. Could you please help me?

- A. found                      B. took  
C. lost                         D. got

( C ) 3. — \_\_\_\_\_?

—I like giraffes.

- A. What's your favorite subject  
B. Where are the giraffes from  
C. What animals do you like  
D. How about going to the zoo

( D ) 4. He works only \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. at the night              B. in night  
C. in the night              D. at night

( B ) 5. He often \_\_\_\_\_ his homework to school.

- A. forgets bringing  
B. forgets to bring  
C. leaves bring  
D. leaves to bring

## 三、阅读理解。

In our town, there is a big zoo with a lot of animals in it. There are many beautiful tigers and two old lions. They eat a lot of meat every day.

There are also two big elephants and one baby elephant. The elephants are kind animals. They eat a lot every day. They like children. Children often give them bread and bananas.

Elephants like bananas best.

In our zoo there are also brown bears, black bears and white bears. They stand on their hind legs, hold up their fore limbs and ask for food. They like cakes very much.

There's also a children's corner in our zoo. Children ride horses and donkeys and watch the monkeys there. The monkeys are very funny. They climb(爬) up ropes and jump down again and play with each other like small children.

( C ) 1. Which animals like bananas best?

- A. The monkeys.  
B. The tigers.  
C. The elephants.  
D. The donkeys.

( B ) 2. The zoo is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. near our town  
B. very big  
C. very small  
D. next to the city

( A ) 3. Which animals play like small children?

- A. The monkeys.  
B. The tigers.  
C. The bears.  
D. The lions.

( C ) 4. Why do bears stand on their hind legs?

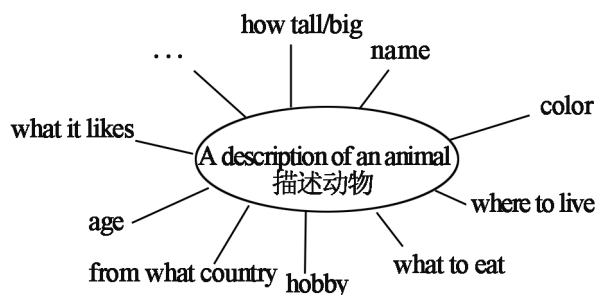
- A. Because they are tired and want to have a rest.  
B. Because they want to jump out.  
C. Because they want to ask for food.  
D. Because they want to eat people.

( C ) 5. How many kinds of bears are there in the zoo?

- A. One.                      B. Two.  
C. Three.                    D. Five.



你会描述动物吗？请按下面描写动物的思维导图描述你喜爱的动物。



1. live

【辨析】live 与 stay

live 强调安家之后的“居住”和“生活”；stay 则是指“暂住；停留”。

His parents live in the countryside, and they live happily. 他的父母住在农村，他们生活得很幸福。

Can you stay a little longer? 你能再待一会儿吗？

2. scary

scary 意为“吓人的；恐怖的”，其主语通常是物。

The movie is really scary. 这部电影真吓人。

3. 本单元写作指导

本单元作文要求根据所给材料提示及自己对动物的了解来描写小动物，表达对动物的喜爱之情。

常用于写类似作文的句型：

①描写动物的性格

They're very cute/interesting/smart/beautiful/lazy...

They are friendly and smart.

They like to eat bamboo leaves.

They like to sleep.

②描写动物的外貌

It's black and white.

③描写动物的能力

He can dance, too.

They can climb the trees and swim in the water.

They can do a lot of things.

④描写动物的出生地及年龄

She is from South Africa.

She is twelve years old.

⑤描写对动物的感情

She is kind of boring.

They are my favorite animals.

I like pandas best.



一、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. What animals does he like (like)?
2. He sleeps (sleep) and relaxes (relax) more than ten hours every day.
3. My parents like playing (play) with their friends.
4. They like watching (watch) TV on Sundays.
5. Please be (be) quiet. The baby is sleeping.
6. Let's talk (talk) about the dogs.
7. They are kind and friendly (friend) to all of us.

二、单项选择。

- ( D ) 1. — \_\_\_\_\_ do you like to see the dogs?  
— Because they are very interesting.  
A. When                      B. Where  
C. What                      D. Why
- ( B ) 2. I like pandas because they are very \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. scary                      B. cute  
C. boring                      D. lazy
- ( D ) 3. — Why \_\_\_\_\_ you like math?

—Because it is really difficult.

A. not                      B. aren't

C. do                         D. don't

( B ) 4. —Where \_\_\_\_\_ lions \_\_\_\_\_ from?

—They are from South Africa.

A. are; come              B. are; 不填

C. do; 不填                D. does; come

( A ) 5. —Do you like dogs?

—\_\_\_\_\_. They are very interesting.

A. Yes, I do                B. Yes, they are

C. No, I don't             D. Yes, it is

### 三、根据要求完成句子。

1. My brother is late for school because he gets up late in the morning. (对画线部分提问)

Why is your brother late for school?

2. The cats are smart, so my brother likes them.

(对画线部分提问)

Why does your brother like cats?

3. Why don't you see the pandas first? (改为同义句)

Why not see the pandas first?

4. Is the animal big? (作否定回答)

No, it isn't.

### 四、书面表达。

憨态可掬的熊猫是中国的国宝,人们都喜欢它。请根据提示写一篇短文介绍你心目中的熊猫。不少于50个词。

提示:black and white, China, bamboo leaves, gentle(温和的)and cute, climb the trees, swim

My favorite animals are pandas. Pandas are only from China. They are black and white. They eat bamboo leaves every day. They are quiet and kind of shy. People all think pandas are gentle and cute, so they like them very much. They can climb the trees and swim in the water. Aren't they interesting?

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



# Unit 6

## I'm watching TV.

### Period 1

### Section A (1a—2d)

#### 预习起航



请将你一周所做的主要事情填在下列表格中。

	Activities
Monday	
Tuesday	
Wednesday	
Thursday	
Friday	
Saturday	
Sunday	

#### 名师导航



#### 1. use

use 既可作为动词, 又可作为名词。用作动词时, 意为“使用; 运用”; 用作名词时, 意为“用途; 用处”。

Can you use a computer? 你会使用电脑吗?

The use of this word is very different from other words. 这个单词的用法与其他单词很不一样。

【拓展】名词 use 加上后缀-ful, 构成形容词 useful, 意为“有用的”; 加上后缀-less, 构成形容词 useless, 意为“无用的”。

We should do something useful to protect the environment. 我们应该做些有益的事情来保护环境。

She sits at home all day, watching TV and feeling useless. 她整天坐在家, 看电视,

感到自己没用。

#### 2. This is Jenny. 我是珍妮。

这是打电话的常用语, 意为“我是珍妮”。英语中打电话表达“我是……”时, 用“This is...”; 在询问对方是谁时, 用“Is that...?”或“Who is that?”。

This is Tom speaking. Mary isn't here now. 我是汤姆。玛丽现在不在此。

【拓展】打电话的常用语有:

May/Could I speak to...? 请……接电话好吗?

Hold on, please. 请等一会儿。

Hold on for a moment/minute. 请稍等。

#### 3. just

just 是副词, 可表达“正好; 恰好; 只是; 仅仅”等意思。

—Am I late? 我迟到了吗?

—No, you're just on time. 没有, 你准时到了。

This is just I want. 这正好是我想要的。

I have just 2 dollars. 我仅有两美元了。

#### 演练巡航



一、根据句意及首字母的提示补全单词。

1. We should wash our hands before having meals.
2. Did you see the wonderful movie called *Iron Man III*?
3. My mother usually makes soup for dinner.
4. —What kind of newspaper do you like best?

—China Daily.

5. My sister is just 3 years old, but she can use computers.

## 二、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. Do you want to go (go) to the zoo?

2. Look! Mrs. Li is wearing (wear) a red shirt.

3. It's seven o'clock. I usually get (get) up at this time every day.

4. Jim and Tom are doing (do) their homework now.

5. —Where is Betty?

—She is having (have) a piano class at school.

## 三、单项选择。

( A ) 1. —Hello! \_\_\_\_\_ Peter.

—Hello, Peter! It's Julie here.

A. This is                      B. I am

C. It is                         D. That is

( C ) 2. —What are you doing, Becky?

—Not much. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ doing my homework.

A. only                         B. also

C. just                         D. usually

( B ) 3. Listen! Ann and Kate \_\_\_\_\_ in the next room.

A. will sing                      B. are singing

C. is singing                      D. sing

( B ) 4. He usually listens to music \_\_\_\_\_ the radio.

A. in                                B. on

C. at                                D. from

( B ) 5. —Do you want to go to the movies with me?

—\_\_\_\_\_.

A. Yes, I am

B. Sounds great

C. See you then

D. You're smart

## 四、补全对话。

A: Hello! 1. This is Tom speaking.

B: Hi, Tom! This is Tony. 2. What are you doing?

A: I'm listening to music.

B: Oh, do you want to go to the movies?

A: Sure. 3. What kind of movies do you want to see?

B: An action movie by my favorite star, Jackie Chan.

A: Good! He's my favorite, too. 4. When do you want to go?

B: Let's go at 7:00 p. m. , OK?

A: OK. 5. See you then.

## Period 2

## Section A (Grammar Focus—3c)



判断下列哪些句子是现在进行时态。

1. We're playing football outside.

2. Is he reading an English book?

3. My father always goes to work by bus.

4. What are you doing, Tom?

5. She's washing her shoes.

6. This book is very interesting.

7. Do you want to go to the movies?

8. Let's meet at the school gate.

9. Are the boys using the phone?

10. My parents like eating out.

现在进行时态的句子: 1 2 4 5 9



### 1. drink

drink 可用作动词,意为“喝;饮;喝酒”;也可用作名词,意为“饮料”。用作名词时,一般为不可数名词,但当指不同种类的饮料时,为可数名词。

My father doesn't drink. 我爸爸不喝酒。

I want some drink. 我想要些饮料。

There are many kinds of drinks in the store. 商店里有很多不同种类的饮料。

【拓展】drink 还可以指“一杯(饮料)”或“一份(饮料)”。

Let's have a drink. 咱们喝一杯吧。

## 2. family, home 与 house

单词	用法	例句
family	指家庭成员或家中人口:①作集体名词时,意为“家庭”,在句中作主语时,谓语动词用单数;②作个体名词时,意为“家人”,在句中作主语时,谓语动词用复数	Almost every family owns a cellphone. 几乎每家都有一部手机。My family are very happy. 我的家人都很高兴。
home	意为“家”,指一个人出生或居住的地方,含有感情色彩	East or west, home is the best. 金窝银窝,不如自己的狗窝。
house	意为“房屋”,强调建筑物	I live in a big house. 我住在一栋大房子里。

## 3. 现在进行时

定义:

现在进行时表示现在(说话瞬间)或现阶段正在进行或发生的动作。

结构:

①肯定句:主语+be+v.-ing+其他

②否定句:主语+be+not+v.-ing+其他

③一般疑问句:Be+主语+v.-ing+其他?

④特殊疑问句:特殊疑问词+be+主语+v.-ing+其他?

He is reading a newspaper now. 他现在正在看报。

He isn't watching TV. 他不在看电视。

Are they having breakfast? 他们正在吃早饭吗?

—What are you doing? 你在干什么?

—I'm doing my homework. 我在做作业。

时态标志:

现在进行时的标志词有 now, look, listen 等。

v.-ing 形式的构成:

①一般直接在动词原形末尾加-ing。如: play→playing, read→reading 等。

②以不发音的字母 e 结尾的动词,先去掉 e, 再加-ing。如: come→coming, write→writing 等。

③以重读闭音节结尾的单词,且词尾只有一个辅音字母,应双写该辅音字母再加-ing。如: shop→shopping, get→getting 等。

## 演练巡航



### 一、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

- Look! The boys are swimming (swim) in the river.
- Lin Tao is putting (put) on his coat now.
- Sometimes I go shopping (shop) with my mother.
- Listen! The birds are singing (sing) in the tree.
- Those men (man) are playing tennis now.

### 二、根据要求完成句子。

- Lisa is drawing a picture. (改为否定句)  
Lisa isn't drawing a picture.
- They are having dinner at home. (改为一般疑问句)  
Are they having dinner at home?
- Jim is taking photos in the zoo. (对画线部分提问)  
What's Jim doing in the zoo?
- Is Lucy playing the piano now? (作肯定回答)  
Yes, she is.
- Is Jack reading English? (作否定回答)  
No, he isn't.

### 三、单项选择。

- ( C ) 1. —          Frank          his homework?  
—No, he isn't.  
A. Does; do                      B. Will; do

- C. Is; doing      D. Can; do
- ( B ) 2. My brother \_\_\_\_\_ basketball every day.  
Look! He \_\_\_\_\_ basketball over there.
- A. plays; plays  
B. plays; is playing  
C. is playing; is playing  
D. is playing; plays
- ( C ) 3. — \_\_\_\_\_ shall we start?  
— Let's meet at 7 o'clock at the school gate.

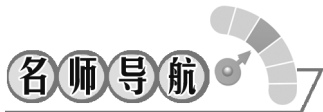
- A. Where      B. How  
C. When      D. What
- ( C ) 4. Sam \_\_\_\_\_ to the movies every Saturday.
- A. will go      B. is going  
C. goes      D. go
- ( D ) 5. — \_\_\_\_\_ watching TV?  
— Yes, I am.
- A. Do you like  
B. Would you like  
C. How about  
D. Are you

## Period 3 Section B (1a—1e)



根据不同的场所,写出在该场所常进行的活动。

Places	Activities
park	play football
library	
shop	
home	
school	



### 1. shop

shop 可作名词,也可作动词。作名词时,意为“商店”,是可数名词;作动词时,意为“买东西;购物”,多用作不及物动词。

Tony's aunt works at the shop. 托尼的姑姑在商店里上班。

Mary is shopping now. 玛丽现在正在购物。

**【拓展】**go shopping 去购物    do some shopping 买东西    shopping bag 购物袋    shopping center 购物中心

### 2. man

man 作不可数名词时,意为“人类”,可与 mankind 互换使用。

The chickens have no fear of man. 小鸡不怕人。



一、根据句意及首字母的提示补全单词。

- I want to go to the supermarket to buy some vegetables.
- Jack usually swims in a pool.
- Lucy is reading books in the library at school now.
- Do you like shopping?  
—Yes, I always buy some useful things.
- Is the man exercising?  
—Yes, he is.

二、从方框中选择最恰当的单词,并用其适当形式填空。

pool    shop    boy    because    favorite  
library    free    hobby    study    swim

Tom is now studying at a middle school. He is a very good boy. He has lots of hobbies. For example, he likes swimming. When he is free, he often swims in a pool. Besides, he enjoys reading books. He always goes to the library with his classmates. His favorite book is *Harry Potter* which is written by J. K. Rowling. Sometimes he likes to go shopping with his friends, because he thinks that it is a good way to relax.

### 三、完形填空。

My name is Tom. I'm twelve years old. It's a sunny day today. I am having a good 1 in the park with my mother. I like sunny days 2. I can do a lot of activities. I can go to the zoo. I can 3 go swimming or play basketball. I don't like 4 days. When it rains, I can only watch TV or 5 books at home. And that's really 6. But my friend Tony doesn't think so. He likes rainy days very much. Do you know 7? Because he likes to play with 8. I have a photo of Tony and his friend. They are playing in the rain. And they look very 9. I think I can have a try, too. What 10 do you like?

- ( A ) 1. A. time                      B. name  
   C. fun                                D. night  
( C ) 2. A. though                    B. but

- C. because                          D. because of  
( C ) 3. A. too                            B. also  
   C. either                            D. neither  
( B ) 4. A. sunny                        B. rainy  
   C. windy                            D. cloudy  
( A ) 5. A. read                            B. write  
   C. draw                            D. watch  
( C ) 6. A. interesting                B. difficult  
   C. boring                            D. exciting  
( C ) 7. A. when                            B. what  
   C. why                                D. how  
( B ) 8. A. snow                            B. water  
   C. computer                        D. cloud  
( A ) 9. A. happy                            B. smart  
   C. scary                                D. sad  
( C ) 10. A. place                        B. animal  
   C. weather                        D. activity

## Period 4

## Section B (2a—2c)



阅读短文，翻译文中画线的句子。

It is Monday today. Tony gets up at 6:00. ① 他妈妈正在做早餐。 ② His father is doing sports in the garden. Lily, his sister, is sleeping in the room. She doesn't need to go to school. So she doesn't need to get up. "She is lucky," Tony thinks. After having breakfast, ③ Tony takes a bus to school. There are many people on it. He arrives at school at 7:00. School starts at 8:00. But there are many students in the classroom. Some students are cleaning the classroom. ④ 一些学生正在读书。 And others are writing. ⑤ Tony often helps his friend clean the classroom.

- ① His mother is cooking breakfast.  
② 他爸爸正在花园里做运动。  
③ 托尼乘车去上学。  
④ Some students are reading.  
⑤ 托尼经常帮助他的朋友打扫教室。



### 1. miss

miss 作动词，意为“想念；错过；未赶上”。

Do you miss your parents? 你想念你的父母吗？

He missed the last bus home and had to stay with a friend. 他没赶上回家的末班车，只好住在一个朋友那里。

### 2. any other

any other 意为“其他任何一个”，其后常接可数名词的单数形式。

Do you have any other shirt? 你还有其他衬衫吗？

【辨析】other, another, the other 与 others

单词	用法	例句
other	意为“其他的”,后接名词	There are other ways to do this exercise. 做这道练习题还可用其他的方法。
another	指三者或三者以上的另一个	I'd like to eat another apple. 我想再吃一个苹果。
the other	指两者中的另一个,常用于 one... the other 结构	I have two school-bags. One is small, the other is big. 我有两个书包。一个是小号,另一个是大号。
others	指许多人或物中的另一部分,后不接名词,常用于 some... others 结构	Some like eating out, others dislike it. 一些人喜欢出去吃,其他人不喜欢。

### 3. a lot

a lot 意为“非常”,常用来修饰形容词、副词或动词,相当于 very much。

Thanks a lot! 非常感谢!

【拓展】a lot 也可作名词性词组,意为“许多”。

I can learn a lot about Chinese history. 我可以学到许多关于中国历史方面的知识。



#### 一、单项选择。

- ( A ) 1. I like Chinese action movies \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. a lot                      B. lots of  
C. a lot of                    D. many
- ( B ) 2. Liu Hui wishes \_\_\_\_\_ his grandparents again.
- A. see                        B. to see  
C. seeing                    D. sees
- ( C ) 3. — \_\_\_\_\_?  
— It's six o'clock p. m.
- A. What the time  
B. What time it is

C. What's the time

D. What is it

- ( B ) 4. Lily and her sister look the same. I can't tell one from \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. another                  B. the other  
C. other                      D. others

#### 二、根据汉语意思完成句子。

1. 什么时候是龙舟节?  
When is the Dragon Boat Festival?
2. 我爸爸常给我读故事。  
My father always reads stories to me.
3. 我现在和一个美国家庭住在一起。  
I am living with an American family.
4. 他思念他的家人并且希望吃到妈妈做的好吃的粽子。  
He misses his family and wishes to have his mother's delicious zongzi.
5. 汤姆正在电视上看足球比赛。  
Tom is watching a soccer game on TV.

#### 三、阅读理解。

We have twenty minutes' rest between classes. Look! Most of us are playing during the rest time. Some students are on the playground. They are having a basketball game. Oh! A boy is running with a ball. And another is trying(尽力)to stop him. They are so cool. And there are some girls watching the game. Some students are in the classroom. They are talking. A few of them are reading or doing homework. Look! A girl is looking at the birds in a tree in front of the classroom. She must be thinking of something interesting because she is smiling(微笑).

What are the teachers doing? Do you know? Some of them are working in the office, and some are talking with students. Everyone is busy with his or her things. Busy and happy!

- ( C ) 1. Where are some students having a game?
- A. In the office.  
B. In front of the classroom.  
C. On the playground.  
D. In the classroom.



- ( A ) 2. A girl is looking at the birds and she is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. happy                      B. busy  
C. sad                          D. interesting
- ( A ) 3. What are the teachers doing?  
A. Working or talking with students.  
B. Having a basketball game.  
C. Playing with the students.  
D. Talking with each other.
- ( B ) 4. What can we know from the passage?

- A. There's a teacher in the classroom.  
B. There're some students in the classroom.  
C. There's no one in the classroom.  
D. There's a bird in the classroom.
- ( D ) 5. The passage is mainly(主要地) about \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. students  
B. a basketball game  
C. rest time  
D. school activities

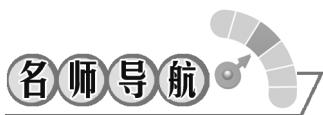
## Period 5

## Section B (3a—Self Check)



请找一张你家的全家福,描述你的家人正在做什么。

Your family members	What are they doing?
You	
Your father	
Your mother	
Your grandfather	
Your grandmother	
Your sister	
Your brother	



### 1. at home

① at home 意为“在家”,此时 home 是名词。

I think she's at home. 我认为她在家。

② home 还可作副词,意为“在家;回家;到家”,常见的搭配: be home, go home, come home, arrive home。

It's getting dark. Let's go home. 天渐渐变黑了,我们回家吧。

【拓展】be in 也译为“在家”,相当于 be at home。

Is Bill in? 比尔在家吗?

### 2. living room

living room 意为“客厅”。

Your living room is so big that it can hold 20 people. 你家的客厅真大,它能容纳 20 人。

【拓展】与 room 有关的词: classroom 教室, dining room 餐厅, restroom 洗手间, bedroom 卧室, roommate 室友。

### 3. 本单元写作指导

本单元的写作话题是用现在进行时描述正在做的事情,在描述时应注意以下两个方面:

① 认真分析需要描述的人物;

② 用现在进行时具体描述此时此刻此人正在做的事情。

教材中出现的相关句型:

What are you/they doing?

What is he/she doing?

Are you doing your homework?

He/She is using the computer.

They are watching TV.

相关动名词短语:

watching TV 看电视

cleaning the room 打扫房间

reading a newspaper 看报纸

talking on the phone 电话里交谈

listening to music 听音乐

playing computer games 玩电脑游戏

washing/doing the dishes 洗餐具

doing the homework 做家庭作业

making dinner 做晚饭





一、根据句意及首字母的提示补全单词。

1. Jim is swimming in a pool. He swims very well.
2. My mother is shopping at the supermarket.
3. We often read books at the library in our school.
4. I want to buy a new house. But I don't have much money.
5. Do you like drinking tea, Steve?

二、从方框中选择最恰当的单词,并用其适当形式填空。

wish child newspaper miss use

1. My grandfather is reading newspapers in the living room.
2. Can I use your pencil, please?

3. He wishes to go to Beijing.
4. The mother misses her son very much.
5. There are five children in the zoo now.

三、书面表达。

根据预习起航中的表格内容,描述你家人正在做的事情。

- 要求:1. 文章中须合理使用现在进行时;  
2. 文章须包含所给信息,可适当发挥;  
3. 50 个词左右。

It's 7:00 in the morning. Let's have a look at what my family are doing. Oh, look! I am doing my homework now in my room. My grandfather is cleaning the living room. My father is reading a book in a chair. My mother and my grandmother are cooking breakfast. Where is my sister? She is playing computer games in her room.

# Unit 7

## It's raining!

### Period 1

### Section A (1a-2d)

#### 预习起航



一、根据图片写出相应的有关天气的单词。

1. Beijing is windy  today.

2. It's sunny  in Shanghai.

3. It's snowy  in Moscow.

4. In Toronto, it's rainy  today.

5. It's cloudy  in Sydney.

二、翻译下列句子。

1. 你好,我是里克。

Hello, this is Rick.

2. 你正在做什么?

What are you doing?

3. 最近怎么样?

How's it going?

4. 你能让他给我回电话吗?

Can/Could you tell him to call me back?

#### 名师导航



1. 表示天气情况的词

①cloud, wind, rain, snow 是名词,它们的意思分别是“云、风、雨、雪”,在这些词后面加

上 y 就构成了相应的形容词,即 cloud→cloudy, wind→windy, rain→rainy, snow→snowy。

②snow 和 rain 还可用作动词。

It's raining. 天在下雨。

It's snowing. 天在下雪。

2. 询问天气情况

有两种问法:①How's the weather? ②What's the weather like? 答语通常为“It's + 描述天气的形容词或动词-ing 形式”。

—How's the weather in Beijing? = What's the weather like in Beijing? 北京的天气如何?

—It's sunny/rainy/raining/cloudy/snowy/snowing/windy. 天晴/下雨/多云/下雪/刮风。

【提示】weather 是不可数名词,意为“天气;气候”。其前面不能用不定冠词 a 修饰,但可以用定冠词 the 或 bad/fine 等修饰。通常可以用 it 来指代。

3. 电话用语

在电话用语中常用 this 表示“我”,用 that 表示“你”,并且可以在句末加上 speaking,表示是某人正在接电话。

This is/It's Mary(speaking). 我是玛丽。

Who's that? 你是谁?

Is that Mary speaking? 你是玛丽吗?

4. How's it going? 情况怎么样?

How's...? 句型在问候语中用来询问对方的情况,答语常为“Great. /Pretty good. /Not bad. /Just so so. /Terrible.”等。

How's it going with your study? 你的学习情况如何?

【拓展】表达问候还可以用“How are you?”进行

询问,答语常为“Fine, thank you.”。这句话的重点不是询问,而是问候或打招呼。

### 5. tell sb. to do sth.

tell sb. to do sth. 意为“让某人做某事”,其否定结构为 tell sb. not to do sth.。

He tells me to drive slowly. 他让我开车慢点。

My mother tells me not to fight with my classmates. 我妈妈叫我不要和同学打架。



### 一、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. It's a sunny (sun) day today.
2. The weather is bad now. It's windy (wind).
3. Sounds like you are having (have) a good time now.
4. It's cloudy (cloud) now. Is it going to rain?
5. —How's the weather now?  
—It is raining (rain) now.
6. It's snowy (snow) in winter in Harbin now.

### 二、根据汉语意思完成句子。

1. 请给吉尔捎个口信。  
Please take a message for Jill.
2. 我弟弟正在公园里打排球。  
My brother is playing volleyball in the park.
3. 他们正在做什么?  
What are they doing?
4. 汤姆,尽快给你妈妈回个电话。  
Tom, call your mother back soon.
5. 老师让我们明天早晨7点到校。  
Our teacher tells us to get to school at 7 o'clock tomorrow morning.

### 三、单项选择。

- ( C ) 1. — \_\_\_\_\_?  
—It's terrible.  
A. What's he doing

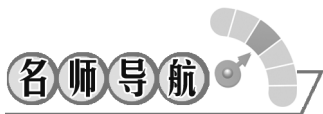
- B. How is he  
C. How's it going  
D. What's the weather like

- ( B ) 2. —Can Peter play games with us, Mr. Howking?  
—Wait a minute. He \_\_\_\_\_ a shower.  
A. takes      B. is taking  
C. can take      D. is going to take
- ( B ) 3. —\_\_\_\_\_ the weather like in Moscow?  
—It's rainy.  
A. How's      B. What's  
C. How does      D. What does
- ( B ) 4. —Hi, Jenny. \_\_\_\_\_ speaking.  
—Oh, hi, Tony.  
A. I'm Tony      B. This is Tony  
C. That is Tony      D. There is Tony
- ( D ) 5. —I want to go to Beijing tomorrow.  
—\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. That's all right  
B. No problem  
C. You're right  
D. Sounds like a good idea
- ( B ) 6. —How is everything going at the school, dear?  
—\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. I'm all right, thanks  
B. Not too bad  
C. Not at all  
D. That's all right, thank you
- ( D ) 7. —Let's watch TV after lunch.  
—\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Yes, I'd love to  
B. Sorry, I'm not  
C. I don't know  
D. That's a good idea
- ( A ) 8. If I am wanted on the telephone, ask him to leave a \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. message      B. letter  
C. diary      D. sentence



翻译下列句子。

- 天气怎么样?  
—多云。  
— What's the weather like/How's the weather?  
— It's cloudy.
- 你在做什么?  
—我在做饭。  
— What are you doing?  
— I'm cooking.
- 他们在做什么?  
—他们正在公园里打篮球。  
— What are they doing?  
— They are playing basketball in the park.
- 他在做什么?  
—他在他朋友家里学习。  
— What's he doing?  
— He's studying at his friend's home.
- 情况怎么样?  
—很好!  
— How's it going?  
— Great!



### 1. 现在进行时的特殊疑问句

①现在进行时的特殊疑问句通常由“特殊疑问词+现在进行时的一般疑问句”构成。针对特殊疑问句的回答,不能用 yes 或 no,而要看实际情况。

—What are they doing now? 他们现在在干什么?

—They are swimming. 他们在游泳。

②当疑问词在句中作主语时,现在进行时的特殊疑问句采用陈述句语序,即“疑问词+

is/are+动词-ing形式+其他”。

—Who is sleeping in the bedroom? 谁在卧室睡觉?

—My father. 我父亲。

### 2. how 的用法

①用来询问天气

How's the weather today? 今天天气怎么样?

②用来问候,打招呼

How are you? 你好吗?

How's it going? 你那里情况如何?

③用来询问方式或手段

How do you get to school? 你怎样去上学?

④用来询问年龄

How old is your brother? 你弟弟多大了?

⑤用来询问价格

How much is the purple sweater? 那件紫色的毛衣多少钱?



### 一、根据句意及首字母的提示补全单词。

- The weather is bad. Don't go out.
- My father usually cooks dinner for us.
- If you have any problem, you can ask me for help.
- The coat is still dirty. Wash it again.

### 二、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

- What's she doing?  
—She is playing (play) the guitar.
- I usually do (do) my homework in the evening.
- It is raining (rain) hard now.
- My sister walks (walk) to school every day.
- Look! They are dancing (dance) in the classroom.
- She never arrives (arrive) late for school.

三、补全对话。

J=John B=Bob

B: Hello, John. This is Bob.

J: Hi, Bob. 1. How's it going ?

B: Great! What about you?

J: Not bad. 2. How's the weather in Sydney ?

B: It's windy in Sydney.

J: 3. What are you doing now ?

B: I'm reading a book at home. Is it sunny in Beijing now?

J: Yes. 4. The weather is great/It's great/good .  
And I'm playing basketball outside.

B: That's great. I love to play basketball, too.

J: 5. When do you (usually) play basketball ?

B: On the weekend.

Period 3

Section B (1a—1e)



翻译下列单词、短语或句子。

1. 有风而干燥 windy and dry

2. 多云而凉爽 cloudy and cool

3. 晴朗而炎热 sunny and hot

4. 下雪而寒冷 snowy and cold

5. 温暖的 warm

6. sunny 晴朗的

7. cloudy 多云的

8. raining (正)下雨的

9. How's it going there?

(你在)那儿情况怎么样?

10. 他正玩得开心呢!

He's just having a good time!



1. dry

①用作形容词时,意为“干燥的”,其反义词为 wet,意为“潮湿的”。

Clean your glasses with a soft dry cloth.  
用柔软的干布擦拭你的眼镜。

②用作及物动词时,意为“使干燥;弄干”。

Don't cry. Dry your tears. 不要哭,擦干你的眼泪。

③用作不及物动词时,意为“变干”。

The wet T-shirt will soon dry in the sun.  
这件湿 T 恤在太阳下会干得很快。

2. cold

cold 既可用作形容词,意为“冷的”,又可用作名词,意为“感冒”。

It's very cold in Beijing in winter. 北京的冬天很冷。

She has a bad cold. 她得了重感冒。

【辨析】cold 与 cool

两者对冷的程度描述是不一样的。cool 指“凉爽的”,反义词是 warm; cold 指“寒冷的”,反义词是 hot。两者一般不能混用。比如说秋天很凉爽,让人有一种惬意的感受,只能用 cool; 冬天只能用 cold 了,因为它是指寒冷,不会让人感到很舒服。



一、根据所给单词或首字母的提示完成句子。

1. The sun (sun) is shining. It's sunny (sun).

2. There are a lot of clouds in the sky.  
It's cloudy (cloud).

3. Please close the door. It's very cold .

4. There is little (几乎没有) rain here, so it's very dry .

5. Jay Chou is a very cool man.

二、单项选择。

( B ) 1. —        the weather like in Wuhan?  
— It's raining.

A. How's                      B. What's  
C. What does                D. How does

( C ) 2. — It        here right now. How about

Boston?

—It's windy.

- A. snow                      B. snows  
C. is snowing                D. will snow

( C ) 3. —Can you help me take a message?

—\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. No, I don't  
B. Yes, I do  
C. No problem  
D. That sounds boring

( D ) 4. —It's so \_\_\_\_\_ here.

—Why not open the window?

- A. cold                        B. warm  
C. cool                        D. hot

( B ) 5. —\_\_\_\_\_?

—He's taking photos in the park.

- A. How is he  
B. What is he doing  
C. What's he

D. Where is he

三、补全对话。

A=Alex J=Jenny

J: Hello! This is Jenny.

A: Hi, Jenny. It's Alex. 1. What are you doing now ?

J: I am playing with my sister in the snow.

A: In the snow? 2. Is it snowy in your city ?

J: Yes. It's cold here. I'm going to skate this afternoon.

A: 3. Can you skate ?

J: Yes, I can skate well. How's the weather in your city?

A: 4. It's cool and cloudy./It's sunny . I'm playing soccer with my friends.

J: Do you play soccer every day?

A: Yes, I play it after school every day.

J: I see. 5. Have a good time/Have fun !

A: Thank you.

## Period 4

## Section B (2a—2c)

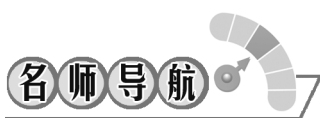


一、写出下列单词的反义词。

1. hot cold            2. cool warm  
3. wet dry             4. good bad

二、翻译下列短语。

1. 愉快地做某事 have fun/a great time doing sth.  
2. summer school 暑期学校  
3. 上暑期班 go to summer school  
4. be happy to do sth. 高兴地做某事  
5. 在水池旁边 by the pool  
6. right now 此刻/现在  
7. 喝果汁 drink juice  
8. study hard 努力学习  
9. 我的一些老朋友 some of my old friends  
10. right for... 适于……



1. have a great time 玩得愉快/开心

have a good/great time = have fun = enjoy oneself

We have a great time singing and dancing. 我们唱歌、跳舞,玩得很高兴。

【拓展】have a good/great time (in) doing sth. 意为“愉快地做某事”。

We had a good time (in) playing tennis yesterday afternoon. 昨天下午我们打网球打得很开心。

2. sit by the pool 坐在水池边

①sit 是不及物动词,意为“坐”。若表达“坐在某地”,要用介词短语。

Please sit on the chair and have a rest. 请坐在椅子上休息一会儿。

②介词 by 意为“在……旁边”,它表示的位置比 near 更近一些。





- C. game                      D. subject  
 ( B )8. A. putting            B. flying  
           C. drawing            D. making  
 ( C )9. A. good                B. high

- C. well                        D. fast  
 ( A )10. A. to go              B. go  
           C. goes                    D. going

## Period 5 Section B (3a—Self Check)



翻译下列单词、短语或句子。

1. Russian 俄罗斯的  
 2. snowman 雪人  
 3. 滑冰 skate  
 4. 冬季 winter  
 5. 带回家 take home  
 6. 拍照 take photos  
 7. 我想你。 I miss you.  
 8. 还不错。 Not too bad.  
 9. 今天天气怎么样?

What's the weather like/How's the weather today?

10. 情况怎么样?

How's it going?



### 1. 现在进行时

现在进行时主要表示目前正在进行或现阶段正在进行的动作,其构成为 is/am/are + 现在分词。常和现在进行时连用的时间状语有 now, at the moment, these days 等。

基本用法:

①表示说话时动作正在进行或发生。

They are watching TV now. 他们在看电视。

Listen, Lily is singing. 听,莉莉在唱歌。

②表示现阶段正在进行或发生的事。

I am reading a book these days. It's very interesting. 我这几天在读一本书。这本书挺有趣的。

③表示按计划或安排将要进行的动作,常用动词有 come, go, arrive, leave, start 等。

He is going to Shanghai tomorrow. 他明天去上海。

Don't worry. The train is coming. 别担心,火车就要来了。

### 2. 本单元写作指导

本单元的写作话题是描写印象最深的一次度假活动,体裁为记叙文。在描述时应注意以下两个方面:

①文章的结构

Where are you?

What's the weather like?

What are you doing right now?

What are your friends and family doing?

Are you having a good time?

(用适当的词把五个问题的答案连起来,形成一篇连贯的文章)

②常用的表达句型

...be on a vacation in...

...we are in... right now.

It is+天气情况

...is/are doing...

...be right for doing...



一、从方框中选择最恰当的词,并用其适当形式填空。

summer take beautiful visit river  
clean village like weather dance

Hello, my name is Zhang Dan. I live in a small village in Yunnan. The weather here is great. It isn't too hot in summer. And

it isn't too cold in winter, too. It's always sunny. I like living here. The village is a beautiful place, so many people come to visit it every year. There is a river in my village and the water in it is very clean. And I often drink it.

I'm walking in the village now. Look! A woman is taking a photo of a little girl. Two boys are reading books. Who is dancing in the square (广场)? Oh, it's Wang Fang. She dances well. The life here is very relaxing, isn't it?

二、阅读短文,从方框内所给的七个选项中选择五个还原到文章中,使短文意思通顺、结构完整。

Mike's summer vacation

Mike and his parents are on a vacation in Qingdao, a city in Shandong for summer vacation.

1. C

It is about 12:00 when they arrive there. They find a hotel and have a short rest. 2. E At about 3:30 p. m., they get to the beach. There are many people there. Some are lying(躺) on the beach. 3. A Mike is playing with them and he is very happy. His parents also feel relaxed. About two hours later, they go back to the hotel.

In the afternoon, it rains. Mike visits the history museum with his father. 4. F

In the evening, they go to Laoshan Park and take a walk there. 5. G

- A. And many children are playing in the water.  
 B. Mike is a good swimmer.  
 C. Qingdao is a beautiful city with sea.  
 D. His parents like it very much.  
 E. It is really hot and they decide(决定) to go to the beach.  
 F. And his mother goes shopping.  
 G. They are tired but happy.

### 三、书面表达。

假如你是来自美国的 Jane,正在北京学习中文。今天是圣诞节,你给在美国的好友 Becky 写了一封 60 个词左右的电子邮件,内容包括:

1. 北京的天气(下雪,雪景漂亮);
2. 你正在进行的活动(不同的圣诞派对:堆雪人,用萝卜做眼睛和鼻子)。

(提示词: Christmas Day, make some snowmen, carrots, nose, take lots of photos)

Dear Becky,

I'm having great fun studying Chinese in Beijing right now. It's snowing outside and the snow is so beautiful. Today is Christmas Day. I'm having a different Christmas party here. I am making some snowmen with my friends. I can make a nose and eyes with carrots. I am also taking some photos. How happy and relaxed we are!

Yours,

Jane

# Unit 8

## Is there a post office near here?

### Period 1

### Section A (1a—2d)

#### 预习起航



一、翻译下列短语。

1. 邮局 post office
2. 警察局 police station
3. 付费电话 pay phone
4. 在这附近 near here
5. 在桥街上 on Bridge Street
6. (某处)有 there is
7. 在……对面 across from
8. 在……旁边 next to
9. 在……和……之间 between...and
10. 在……前面 in front of
11. 在……后面 behind
12. 离……远 far from

二、根据句意及首字母的提示补全单词。

1. There is a post office near my school. I often send letters there.
2. Do you want to have dinner with me in the restaurant?
3. There is a bank near here. We can get money from it.
4. My sister works in a hospital. She is a nurse.
5. Our school is between a park and a big library.

#### 名师导航



#### 1. across from

across from 意为“在……对面”，其后接表示地点的名词或代词。

The store is just across from the station.

商店就在车站对面。

【拓展】across 作介词时，有“横穿；穿过”之意。

The students help the old people walk across the street. 学生们帮助老人过马路。

#### 2. in front of

in front of 意为“在……的前面”，后接表示地点的名词。本课时还有一些其他表示方位的介词(短语)，如 next to(在……旁边)，between... and(在……和……之间)，behind(在……后面)，on(在……上面)。

【辨析】in front of 与 in the front of

in front of 强调一个物体在另一个物体外部的前面，in the front of 强调一个物体在另一个物体内部的前面。

Look at the map in front of you. 看着你前面的地图。

He always likes sitting in the front of the bus while traveling. 在乘公交车旅行时，他总喜欢坐在公共汽车的前面。

#### 3. there be 结构

①“There be(is/are) + sb./sth. + 地点/时间状语”表示“某地/某时有某人或某物”。

There is a hotel near here. 这附近有一家酒店。

②there be 结构的否定形式是在 be 后加上 not, 表示“某地/某时没有某人或某物”。

There isn't a post office on that street. 那条街上没有邮局。

③there be 结构的一般疑问形式要把 be 动词移到句首，再在句尾加上问号。若句中有 some, 则须将其改为 any。

There are some restaurants on Green Street. (改为一般疑问句)

Are there any restaurants on Green Street? 在格林街道上有一些餐馆吗?

【提示】there be 结构中 be 动词的形式要和其后的主语在数上保持一致。如果有两个或两个以上的名词作主语,要遵循“就近原则”,即 be 动词要和最靠近它的那个主语在数上保持一致。

There is a boy and some girls in the classroom. 教室里有一个男孩和一些女孩。

There are some girls and a boy in the classroom. 教室里有一些女孩和一个男孩。



### 一、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. There is (be) a girl and two boys in the library.
2. There are (be) two libraries in our city.
3. Are there any (some) new hotels near here?
4. There are (be) many busy streets in Beijing.
5. Is (be) there a hospital near here?

### 二、根据汉语意思完成句子。

1. 这附近有警察局吗?  
Is there a police station near here?

2. 在格林大街上有一家旅馆。

There is a hotel on Green Street.

3. 医院就在桥街上。

The hospital is just on Bridge Street.

4. 图书馆在公用电话亭的后面。

The library is behind the pay phone.

5. 餐馆就在公园的对面。

The restaurant is across from the park.

6. 需要我帮忙吗?

How/What can I help you/do for you ?

### 三、补全对话。

M=Mary Z=Zhang Hongmei

M: Excuse me. I'm Mary. 1. What's your name/ May I know your name ?

Z: My name is Zhang Hongmei. Zhang is my last name.

M: Nice to meet you here.

Z: 2. Nice to meet you, too .

M: 3. Is there a post office near here/ in the neighborhood ?

Z: Yes, there is. Go straight this street and turn right. Take a walk through the park. The post office is next to the library.

M: By the way, 4. do you have a pen pal ?

Z: Yes, I do. Frank is my pen pal.

M: 5. Where is he from ?

Z: He's from Toronto, Canada.

M: Nice to talk with you, thank you!

Z: Me, too.

## Period 2

## Section A (Grammar Focus—3c)



归纳 Section A 的重要知识点。

1. 表示地点的词汇: post office, police station, hotel, restaurant, bank, hospital, street, pay

phone, park...

2. 方位介词或词组: next to, in front of, between, behind, across from, on, in, near, in the front of

3. 表示问路和指路的句子:

问路: Where's (the nearest)...?

Can you tell me the way to...?

How can I get to...?

Is there... near/around/here/in the neighborhood?

Which is the way to...?

指路: It's (not) far from here.

It's on.../in front of.../next to.../

across from.../behind.../between...and...

### 名师导航

#### 1. Where's the bank? 银行在哪里?

方位介词(短语)near, in front of, behind, across from, next to 等后常接表示地点的名词,即地点状语。对这些地点状语提问时,常用疑问副词 where。

【拓展】常用的问路的句型:

① Where's (the nearest)...? (最近的)……在哪里?

② Can you tell me the way to...? 你能告诉我去……的路吗?

③ How can I get to...? 我怎样到达……呢?

④ Is there... near here/in the neighborhood? 附近有……吗?

⑤ Which is the way to...? 哪条是去……的路?

#### 2. pay phone

pay phone 意为“付费电话”。pay 作动词,意为“付费”。常见用法:

① pay for sth. 表示“付钱买某物”。

Let me pay for the book. 这本书我来付钱。

② pay + 钱数 + for sth. 表示“付多少钱买某物”。

I have to pay 20 yuan for the book. 我不得不付 20 元买下那本书。

③ pay + sb. + 钱数. 表示“付给某人多少钱”。

I have to pay them 20 pounds for this room each month. 我每个月得付给他们 20 英镑的房租。

### 演练巡航



#### 一、单项选择。

- ( C ) 1. — \_\_\_\_\_ is the hotel?  
— It's across from the hospital.  
A. How far      B. How long  
C. Where      D. What
- ( D ) 2. \_\_\_\_\_. Is there a pay phone near here?  
A. I'm sorry      B. Sorry  
C. Excuse      D. Excuse me
- ( D ) 3. He \_\_\_\_\_ 5 dollars \_\_\_\_\_ this bag.  
A. gets; on      B. take; for  
C. has; on      D. pays; for
- ( D ) 4. — Where's the park?  
— \_\_\_\_\_ next to the post office.  
A There's      B. That is  
C. This is      D. It's
- ( A ) 5. — I can tell you the way \_\_\_\_\_ the airport.  
— Thank you.  
A. to      B. on  
C. in      D. at

#### 二、根据要求完成句子。

1. Sun Hotel is across from Star Supermarket.  
(对画线部分提问)  
Where is Sun Hotel?
2. In this photo, I see Lily is behind Mike. (改为同义句)  
In this photo, I see Mike is in front of Lily.
3. There are some trees in this picture. (改为一般疑问句)  
Are there any trees in this picture?
4. The post office is in front of the pay phone. (用 there be 改写句子)  
There is a pay phone behind the post office.
5. There are some CDs on the desk. (改为否定句)  
There aren't any CDs on the desk.

三、选词填空。

park post office library  
supermarket restaurant

- If you want to borrow a book, you can go to the library.
- If you want to have fun, you can go to the park.

- If you want to go shopping, you can go to the supermarket.
- If you are hungry, you can have a meal in the restaurant.
- If you want to mail(邮寄) a letter, you can go to the post office.

Period 3 Section B (1a-1d)



一、将图中的交通标志和图片下面的文字进行匹配。



- A. B. C. D. E. F.
- Crosswalk( B )
  - Turn right( C )
  - One way( F )
  - No entry( A )
  - No bikes( D )
  - No left turn( E )

二、根据汉语意思完成句子。

- 当你看见一个邮局,向右拐,沿着新街走。  
When you see a post office, turn right. Go along/ down New Street.
- 有一家超市在十字路口。  
There is a supermarket at the crossing.



1. go along Bridge Street 沿着桥街走

along 在这里用作介词,意为“沿着;顺着”。

2. turn left 向左转

turn left 相当于 turn to the left。在 turn left/right 中, left 和 right 用作副词;在 turn to the left/right 中, left 和 right 用作名词。

3. 指路的常见表达方式

① Walk/Go along/up/down... Road/Street.  
沿着……路/街走。

② Turn right/left at the... crossing/turning.  
= Take the... crossing/turning on the right/left.  
在第……路口处向右/左转。

③ Go across the bridge/street. 走过桥/街。

④ Go on until you reach the... 一直走到……

⑤ Turn right/left when you see... 在你见到……时向右/左拐。

4. at the first crossing 在第一个十字路口

这里的 crossing 作名词,意为“十字路口”。

【拓展】cross 作名词时,意为“十字架;交叉”;作动词时,意为“横跨;穿越;划掉;使相交”。

I watched her cross the street. 我看见她穿过了马路。



一、选词填空。

across from between go along  
in the front of on

- There is a pay phone on Center Street.
- Xinhua Park is between Hongqi Supermarket and Bank of China.
- The restaurant is across from the post office.
- The driver is in the front of the bus.
- Go along this street, then turn right at the second crossing.

二、单项选择。

- ( D ) 1. There is a beautiful park \_\_\_\_\_ Fifth Avenue.  
A. in B. on  
C. with D. at
- ( A ) 2. Between the hotel and the park \_\_\_\_\_ a library.







翻译下列句子。

- There is a zoo in my neighborhood.  
我家附近有一个动物园。
- I like to spend time there on weekends.  
我喜欢在那儿过周末。
- I love to watch the monkeys climbing around.  
我爱看猴子爬来爬去。
- To get there, I usually walk out and turn right on Bridge Road.  
为了到那里,我通常步行,然后在桥路向右转。
- I often exercise at the park because I love the clean air and sunshine.  
我经常在公园里锻炼,因为我喜欢清新的空气和阳光。



### 1. in my neighborhood 在我家附近

in my/the neighborhood 相当于 near my home,其中 neighborhood 作名词,意为“邻近;街坊;街区”。

His parents still live in the neighborhood.  
他的父母仍然住在这附近。

【拓展】neighbor 作名词,意为“邻居”;作形容词,意为“邻近的”。

I parked my baby at the neighbor's house.  
我把小孩寄放在邻居家里。

### 2. watch

watch 用作动词时,意为“关注;观看(电视、球赛等)”,常用于 watch sb. doing sth. 结构,意为“看某人做某事”。

I watch the boys playing football on the playground. 我在操场上看男孩们踢足球。

### 3. enjoy

enjoy 用作动词,意为“享受;喜爱”,后面接名词、代词或 v.-ing 形式,即 enjoy (doing) sth. 意为“喜欢(做)某事/物”。

My mother enjoys cooking. 我妈妈喜欢做饭。

【拓展】enjoy oneself 意为“过得愉快;玩得痛快”,相当于 have a good/great time 和 have fun.

We enjoyed ourselves on the playground.  
我们在操场上玩得很开心。



### 一、用适当的介词填空。

- The school is across from the bank.
- The supermarket is between the restaurant and the library.
- Paul lives next to me.
- There is a good hotel in the neighborhood.
- Go along Bridge Street, and you can find the hotel on your right.

### 二、根据句意及汉语的提示完成句子。

- He usually spends (花费) five hours in finishing drawing a picture.
- The math problem is easy. I can work it out easily (容易地).
- The drinks here are all free (免费的).
- Is there a police station in the neighborhood (街区)?
- I enjoy climbing (爬) mountains with friends on weekends.

### 三、根据要求完成句子。

- 很多男孩喜爱踢足球。(完成句子)  
Many boys enjoy playing football.
- The best things in life are free. (改为同义句)  
The best things don't need money in life.
- There is a pay phone in the neighborhood. (改为同义句)  
There is a pay phone near here.
- Across from the park is an old hotel. (改为同

义句)

There is an old hotel across from the park.

5. often, takes, road, she, a, on, walk, the,

(.) (连词成句)

She often takes a walk on the road.

#### 四、单项选择。

( A ) 1. —Why does your brother get up so early?

—\_\_\_\_\_ for the English test.

- A. To study      B. Study  
C. Studies      D. Studying

( C ) 2. —Excuse me. \_\_\_\_\_ is the park?

—Just \_\_\_\_\_ straight and turn left.

- A. Where; going    B. How; go  
C. Where; go      D. What; to go

( A ) 3. —Let me tell you the way \_\_\_\_\_ the park.

—Thank you.

- A. to                  B. on  
C. in                  D. at

( C ) 4. —Is there a library in your school?

—\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. Yes, it is      B. Yes, it has  
C. Yes, there is    D. Yes, we have

( C ) 5. —Where is your school?

—It's \_\_\_\_\_ the left of the bank.

- A. in                  B. at  
C. on                  D. for

## Period 5 Section B (3a—Self Check)

### 预习起航



翻译下列短语。

1. near my house 在我家旁边  
2. turn left 向左转  
3. an old restaurant 一家古老的餐馆  
4. have fun 玩得开心  
5. play Chinese chess 下中国象棋  
6. 在北街 on North Street  
7. 烹调食物 cook food  
8. 去购物 go shopping  
9. 在周末 on weekends/on the weekend  
10. 在学习日里 on school days

### 名师导航



#### 1. have some free time 有点空闲时间

① have 用作动词,意为“有”,强调所属关系,表示主语“拥有”。

I have many books. 我有很多书。

Do you have any good friends? 你有一些好朋友吗?

【辨析】there be 与 have/has

there be 和 have/has 都表示“有”,但用法不同:there be 结构强调客观存在,常表示“某地有(存在)某人/物”;have/has 则强调某人“拥有”。

I have two brothers and a sister. 我有两个弟弟和一个妹妹。

There are six people in my family. 我家有六口人。

② free 用作形容词时,意为“免费的;自由的;空闲的”,反义词为 busy。

He has no free time. 他没有空闲时间。

#### 2. spend

spend 作动词,意为“花费;度过”。其用法如下:

① 表示“花费”时,主语只能是表示人的名词或代词。

Andy spent a lot of money on books. 安迪花了很多钱买书。

② 表示“在……上花费(时间、金钱等)”时,常用 spend some money/time on sth. 结构,其中介词 on 后接名词或代词。

I spent 10 yuan on this book. 我花了 10 元买这本书。

③ 表示“花费(时间、金钱等)做某事”时,常用 spend some money/time (in) doing sth. 结

构,介词 in 可以省略。

They spent 20 *yuan* buying the dictionary. 他们花了 20 元买那本字典。

④表示“和某人度过时间”时,使用 spend time with sb. 结构。

I enjoy spending the weekends with my family. 我喜欢和家人一起过周末。

### 3. 本单元写作指导

本单元的写作要求是描写自己周围的一些地方,说明自己最喜欢的一处地点,并说明原因及如何去此处。

#### ①文章的结构

首先,可根据实际情况写出自己的家庭住址及周围其他一些地点。

其次,描述自己最喜欢去的一个地方,并以 because 引导的句子来表达自己喜欢此处的原因。

再其次,描述如何到达此处。

最后,再通读一遍自己的文章,看是否有错误。

#### ②常用表达句型

I live in...

My favorite place is...

To get there, I have to...

Go along...

Turn right/left at the...

It's on the right/left.



#### 一、单项选择。

- ( B ) 1. My home is on a \_\_\_\_\_ street, so it is very noisy during the day.  
A. quiet                      B. busy  
C. clean                        D. dirty

- ( C ) 2. Go along this street, \_\_\_\_\_ and you can see the post office.  
A. turn on                      B. turn off  
C. turn left                     D. turn around

- ( C ) 3. She enjoys \_\_\_\_\_ the guitar in the park every morning.  
A. play                         B. plays  
C. playing                      D. to play

- ( B ) 4. The supermarket is \_\_\_\_\_ the park and the school.  
A. next                         B. between  
C. across                        D. on

- ( C ) 5. \_\_\_\_\_ the street and take the fifth crossing on the left and you'll see the post office on your right.  
A. Walk in                      B. Walking in  
C. Walk along                  D. To walk along

#### 二、根据汉语意思完成句子。

1. 要去那里的话,我沿着桥街走,然后在长街向左拐。

To get there, I go along the Bridge Street and turn left on Long Street.

2. 它就在右边,挨着图书馆。

It is on the right, next to a library.

3. 我喜欢和爷爷奶奶一起过周日。

I like to spend time with my grandparents on Sundays.

4. 我有时看邻居家的猫爬树。

I sometimes watch the neighbor's cat climbing the trees.

5. 像这样过周末是很放松的。

It is relaxing to spend weekends like this.

# Unit 9

## What does he look like?

### Period 1

### Section A (1a-2d)

#### 预习起航



预习 1a-2d 内容, 然后从以下方面描述你同学的外貌。

Names	Hair	Height	Build

#### 名师导航



#### 1. 询问及描述人的外貌的英语表述

“What do/does + 主语 + look like?” 用来询问某人的长相, 答语用描述外貌特征的词或短语。

—What does your mother look like? 你妈妈长什么样?

—She is thin and short. 她又瘦又矮。

—What does the boy look like? 那个男孩长什么样?

—He's of medium build. 他中等体形。

**【拓展】**①询问某人的气质或性格如何时, 通常用“What + be + 主语 + like?”句型。

—What is your brother like? 你哥哥性格怎么样?

—He is outgoing. 他很开朗。

②描述人的身体某一部分特征, 如留长发、胡子等, 用“have/has + 名词”表示。

He has short and curly hair. 他长着又短又卷的头发。

③描述人的身高、体重等特征时, 可用“be

+ 表身体特征的形容词”或“be + 表身体特征的名词”表示。

The girl is tall and beautiful. 这女孩又高又漂亮。

The man is of medium height. 这个男士中等身高。

**2. Yeah, but I may be a little late.** 好啊, 但我可能会稍微迟一点。

a little 意为“少量的; 一点儿”, 修饰形容词。a little 还可修饰不可数名词, 表示“一点儿”。little 意为“小的; 少的”, 作“少的”讲时, 用来修饰不可数名词, 表示否定意思, 指少到几乎没有。

I'm a little tired after having a P. E. class. 上完一节体育课后, 我有点儿累。

There's a little milk in the glass. 杯子里有 一点儿牛奶。

There's little water in the bottle. 瓶子里几乎没有水。

#### 演练巡航



一、用 is 和 has 填空。

1. Yao Ming is a basketball player. He is tall.
2. Peter has short hair and a big mouth.
3. Sally is of medium height.
4. The baby is fat and he has blue eyes.
5. His uncle has long face and is of medium build.

二、单项选择。

- ( C ) 1. Our classmates look \_\_\_\_\_ when they

- hear the good news.
- A. sad                      B. angry  
C. happy                    D. kind
- ( B ) 2. — \_\_\_\_\_ does your favorite singer look like?  
—He has curly hair.  
A. How                      B. What  
C. Who                      D. Whom
- ( A ) 3. —When shall we go to the movie tonight?  
—Let's \_\_\_\_\_ at seven.  
A. meet                      B. know  
C. see                        D. come
- ( B ) 4. The boy \_\_\_\_\_ blue eyes is my brother.  
A. of                         B. with  
C. to                         D. for
- ( D ) 5. — \_\_\_\_\_?  
—He is tall and thin.  
A. What does he like  
B. What is he like  
C. Who is he  
D. What does he look like
- ( C ) 6. The young man \_\_\_\_\_ glasses is my math teacher.  
A. wear                      B. put on  
C. with                      D. in

### 三、根据汉语意思完成句子。

1. 你喜欢看书还是看电视?  
\_\_\_\_\_ Do you like reading or watching TV?
2. 这个男孩有点儿懒。我不喜欢他。  
The boy is a little lazy. I don't like him.
3. 我爸爸留着黑而短的头发。  
My father has black and short hair.
4. 汤姆像他爸爸,喜欢看书。  
Tom looks like his father and he likes reading.
5. 她中等身高,长头发。  
She is of medium height and she has long hair.

### 四、补全对话。

- A: Do you know Deng Ziqi?  
B: Deng Ziqi? I don't know. 1. What does she do ?  
A: She's a popular singer.  
B: 2. What does she look like ?  
A: She's not tall. 3. She has long and curly hair .  
B: Long and curly hair? Oh, I see. Look! Who's that woman over there?  
A: 4. Which one ?  
B: The one with long blonde hair.  
A: 5. She's my English teacher . She teaches me English very well. We all like her.

## Period 2

## Section A (Grammar Focus—3d)



请描述下面三个人的外貌特点。



Xiaoxin

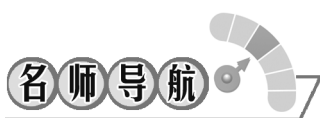
Xiaopang

Xiaogao

---



---



### 1. actor 与 actress

actor 和 actress 都是名词, actor 是指“演员”, 尤指男演员; actress 仅指女演员。它们的复数形式分别是 actors 和 actresses。

### 2. person

person 是可数名词, 表示单数“人”, 有复数形式, 可以说 a person (一个人) 或 two persons (两个人)。

He is a very nice person. 他是一个很好的人。

【辨析】person 与 people

person 是个体名词，它泛指 man, woman 或 child 中的任何一个，其复数形式是 persons，但人们习惯用 people 代替 persons。当需要说明一个人的性别时，要用 a man 或 a woman 来表示。

Who is the youngest person in your class? 你们班里年龄最小的是谁?

people 作“人”讲时，是集合名词，表复数概念。说“一个人”时，不用 people。当表示两个以上的人时，可用 people。如: twenty people (20 个人)。

There are a lot of people in the park. 公园里有许多人。

people 意为“民族”时，有单、复数之分。

There are 56 peoples in China. 中国有 56 个民族。



### 一、翻译下列短语。

- 中等个儿 of medium height
- 中等身材 of medium build
- 短发 short hair
- 长卷发 long curly hair
- 看上去像 look like
- 同一个人 the same person
- 一点儿;少量 a little
- 你最喜欢的男演员 your favorite actor

### 二、根据句意及首字母的提示补全单词。

- My favorite actress is Zhao Liying. She acts very well.
- There is an interesting film today. Let's go to see it.  
—OK. But I don't know how to get to the movie.
- That person under the tree is Miss Wang.
- The box is too heavy. I can't carry it.
- I hope I can see you later in England, Tom.
- Daniel is heavy, but his brother is a little thin.

7. The baby has a round face and big eyes.

8. Thank you for buying me a pair of glasses.

### 三、单项选择。

- ( B ) 1. — What does your English teacher \_\_\_\_\_?  
—She is of medium height with short hair.  
A. look at            B. look like  
C. look for           D. look after
- ( C ) 2. I want to drink milk, but there is \_\_\_\_\_ milk in the fridge(冰箱).  
A. a few            B. a little  
C. little            D. few
- ( C ) 3. —Who is your favorite \_\_\_\_\_?  
—Song Zuying. I think she has a sweet voice.  
A. actor            B. player  
C. singer            D. dancer
- ( A ) 4. My father is very \_\_\_\_\_. He often helps others.  
A. kind            B. handsome  
C. tall            D. tidy
- ( B ) 5. —Does your sister have straight \_\_\_\_\_ curly hair?  
—She has straight hair.  
A. of            B. or  
C. with            D. and
- ( D ) 6. —Lisa isn't here. She \_\_\_\_\_ later.  
—Then let's wait for her.  
A. comes            B. come  
C. can come            D. is coming
- ( A ) 7. I want to keep thin because I'm a little bit \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. heavy            B. tall  
C. short            D. medium
- ( D ) 8. —What's your favorite teacher like?  
—\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. She has curly hair  
B. She isn't tall or short  
C. She's beautiful  
D. She's very kind



四、根据要求完成句子。

1. His hair is long. (改为同义句)

He has long hair .

2. He wears a pair of funny glasses. (改为一般疑问句)

Does he wear a pair of funny glasses?

3. The coat is kind of small for me. (改为同义句)

The coat is a little small for me.

4. Cindy is tall with short hair. (对画线部分提问)

What does Cindy look like ?

5. She is not too thin or too heavy. (改为同义句)

She is of medium build .

Period 3

Section B (1a—1e)



请根据图片完成下边的一段人物描述。



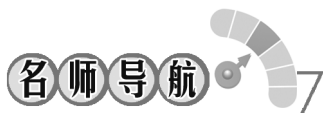
Beckham is a famous football player.

He is tall .

He is of medium build .

He has short hair .

He is wearing a T-shirt .



1. singer

在英语构词法中，动词+后缀-er 变为名词，表示动作的执行者。类似的单词有 teach (教) → teacher (老师)，play (玩耍) → player (运动员；播放器) 等。

2. artist

英语中的名词、动词和形容词+后缀-ist 变为名词时，表示“从事……的专家”。类似的单词有 piano (钢琴) → pianist (钢琴家)，violin (小提琴) → violinist (小提琴家) 等。

3. 用英语描述人物的外貌特征

	单词	句型
毛发	short, long, straight, curly	He has short straight hair. She has long curly hair.
身高	tall, short, medium height	I'm tall/short. She is of medium height.
体形	thin, fat, heavy, medium build	He's thin/fat/heavy. They're of medium build.



一、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. —Who's your favorite singer (sing)?

—It's Li Yuchun.

2. —Where is the artist (art) from?

—He's from Australia.

3. Please remember to close (close) the door when you leave.

4. Each woman (women) gets some flowers as a gift.

5. I like playing (play) chess on weekends.

6. Another child (children) talks to us in English.

7. What does (do) your good friend look like?

8. He has (have) a long face.

9. Please tell me some good ways (way) of swimming.

10. Jenny wears (wear) a new dress today.



## 二、单项选择。

- ( C ) 1. David has \_\_\_\_\_ short hair and \_\_\_\_\_ small mouth.  
A. a; a                      B. a; 不填  
C. 不填; a                  D. 不填; 不填
- ( A ) 2. — \_\_\_\_\_ is your favorite actress?  
— Julie, the woman with blonde hair.  
A. Who                      B. What  
C. Where                    D. How
- ( A ) 3. That's a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ movie. I like it.  
A. interesting              B. boring  
C. difficult                  D. relaxed
- ( C ) 4. — \_\_\_\_\_ is it from your home to school?  
— About half an hour's ride.  
A. How long                B. How often  
C. How far                  D. How much
- ( B ) 5. Johnny Dean is a singer \_\_\_\_\_ curly hair.  
A. of                         B. with  
C. in                         D. to
- ( D ) 6. Look! The two girls \_\_\_\_\_ the same in the picture.  
A. see                        B. have  
C. watch                    D. look
- ( A ) 7. — What's the \_\_\_\_\_ of the mountain?  
— It's 8,844.43 meters.  
A. height                  B. high  
C. heavy                    D. thin
- ( B ) 8. I watch the children \_\_\_\_\_ in the park. They're playing happily.  
A. play                      B. playing  
C. learn                     D. learning
- ( A ) 9. On a \_\_\_\_\_ day, she walks with her dog on the road.  
A. sunny                    B. sun  
C. rain                       D. snow
- ( D ) 10. Listen! A boy \_\_\_\_\_ an English song.

- A. sings                    B. will sing  
C. can sing                D. is singing

## 三、阅读理解。

My name is Grace. My friends are Amy and Linda. Amy and I study in the same school. She is 14 years old. I am one year younger than her. She is tall and thin. She has black short hair and big eyes. She is very pretty. She is funnier than every one. She likes singing and dancing. She is good at English and math. She often helps me with my homework.

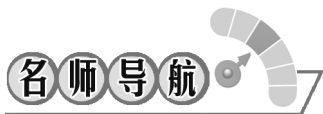
Linda doesn't go to my school. She is an outgoing, lovely girl with long and black hair. She is tall and a little heavy. She often tells funny stories and always makes us laugh. We often play together. We like action movies. We think they are exciting and interesting. I often go to the movies with them by bike on weekends.

- ( C ) 1. How old is Grace?  
A. 15.                        B. 14.  
C. 13.                        D. We don't know.
- ( B ) 2. What does Amy look like?  
A. She is tall and a little heavy.  
B. She has black short hair.  
C. She has black long hair.  
D. She is short and thin.
- ( D ) 3. What does Linda often do?  
A. She often helps me with my homework.  
B. She often dances.  
C. She often speaks English.  
D. She often tells funny stories.
- ( C ) 4. How do they go to the movies on weekends?  
A. On foot.                B. By bus.  
C. By bike.                D. By subway.
- ( B ) 5. What do they think of action movies?  
A. Scary.                    B. Exciting.  
C. Boring.                  D. Terrible.



用画线单词的反义词填空。

1. My grandpa is old. He isn't young.
2. My hair is long. But my sister's is short.
3. Li Lei has curly hair. He doesn't have straight hair.
4. My aunt isn't fat. She is thin.
5. We are in the same school but we are in different classes.
6. The math problem isn't easy. It's difficult.



1. He wants to draw a good picture of each criminal, but this job is sometimes difficult. 他想把每一个罪犯的图片画好,但这份工作有时有点难。

each 作限定词,意为“(两个或两个以上人或物中的)各自的;每”,只能接单数可数名词。

Each school has its library. 每一所学校都有自己的图书馆。

Each boy and each girl should study hard. 每个男孩和女孩都应该努力学习。

【辨析】each 与 every

each 可以单独使用,也可接名词,还可接 of 短语,强调个体;而 every 只可作限定词,修饰单数可数名词,不能单独使用,其后也不能接 of 短语,强调整体。

Each of my friends gave me presents for my birthday. 我的每个朋友都给了我生日礼物。

Each child has a pencil box. 每个孩子都有一个文具盒。

Every student is here. 每个学生都在这里。

2. . . . says one woman. Another woman says. . . .  
……一个妇女说。另一个妇女说……

another 在此处是限定词,也可作代词,泛

指同类事物中三者或三者以上的“另一个”,只能代替或修饰单数名词。

I don't like this one. Please show me another. 我不喜欢这个,请给我看另一个。

【拓展】①one... another 表示不定数目中的“一个……另一个”,而表示两件事物或两个人中的“一个……另一个”则用 one... the other...。

I have two apples. One is green, the other is red. 我有两个苹果,一个是青苹果,另一个是红苹果。

②one another 意为“互相”,相当于 each other。

We should help one another. 我们应该互相帮助。

### 3. in the end

in the end 是介词短语,意为“最后;终于”,在句中作状语,相当于 at last 或 finally,其反义短语为 at first。

The old man walks to the post office in the end. 最后老人步行到了邮局。

【拓展】at the end of 意为“在……的尽头、结尾”。

We will have an exam at the end of this month. 我们在这个月底有一场考试。

The bank is at the end of the street. 银行在这条街的尽头。



一、选择方框中最恰当的单词,并用其适当形式填空。

artist meet real different another

1. My cousin likes drawing pictures. She wants to be an artist.
2. Tina is very beautiful and she is a great actress. I think she's really cool.
3. Many people may describe the same person differently.

4. I don't like this skirt. Can you show me another one?
5. —Let's meet at the school gate.  
—That sounds great.

## 二、单项选择。

- ( C ) 1. \_\_\_\_\_ of them has short straight hair.  
A. All                      B. Both  
C. Each                     D. Every
- ( B ) 2. —Excuse me. Can you tell me the \_\_\_\_\_ to the post office?  
—Go along this street and you'll see it on your left.  
A. road                     B. way  
C. street                    D. direction
- ( B ) 3. \_\_\_\_\_, you must finish your homework, then you can play with your friends.  
A. At last                  B. At first  
C. Finally                  D. In the end
- ( A ) 4. The students stop \_\_\_\_\_ and begin to have classes.  
A. talking                  B. to talk  
C. speaking                D. to speak
- ( C ) 5. The boy puts a photo of his parents \_\_\_\_\_ his book.  
A. out                        B. of  
C. in                          D. up

## 三、从所给的七个句子中选择五个补全对话。

- A: Police station. Can I help you?  
B: Yes. It's about my daughter, Sally. She went outside alone this morning, and she hasn't come back yet (还未回来), and it's eleven o'clock and...  
A: Just a moment, Mrs. ...?  
B: 1. C  
A: How old is Sally?  
B: 2. D  
A: And what does she look like?  
B: 3. F  
A: And what's she wearing?  
B: 4. G  
A: We'll do our best (尽最大努力) to find her. We'll call you if we get the information (信息).  
B: 5. A

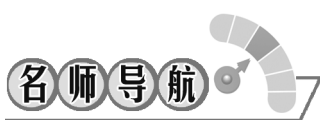
- A. Thank you so much. Goodbye.  
B. She is outgoing.  
C. Mrs. White, 10 Green Street.  
D. She's ten.  
E. She likes drawing. Her favorite sport is skating.  
F. She has brown eyes and short hair.  
G. She is wearing a green T-shirt, white shorts and sports shoes.

## Period 5

## Section B (3a—Self Check)



Mr. Brown 在商场里不慎丢失了自己的小儿子 Jeff, 于是去寻人处登记。假如你是 Mr. Brown, 该如何根据以下图片向那里的值班人员描述 Jeff 呢?



### 1. wear

wear 是动词, 意为“穿; 戴”。

My uncle usually wears blue jeans and sports shoes. 我叔叔通常穿蓝色牛仔裤和运动鞋。

【辨析】wear, put on, in 与 dress

① wear 强调穿的状态, 其宾语可以是衣服, 也可以是饰品等。

I have to wear my school uniform to

school every day. 我每天得穿校服上学。

②put on 强调穿的动作,意为“穿上;戴上”,其宾语是衣服、鞋帽等。

It's so hot outside. You'd better put on your cap. 外面太热了。你最好戴上遮阳帽。

③介词 in 也可以表示“穿着;戴着”的状态,后接衣服或衣服的颜色。

The girl in red is my sister. 穿着红色衣服的是我妹妹。

④dress 意为“给……穿衣;打扮”,表示动作或状态。用作及物动词时,其宾语常常是表示人的名词或代词。

The three-year-old girl can dress herself. 这个3岁的小女孩自己会穿衣服。

## 2. 本单元写作指导

本单元主要是学习人物描写。对人物的描写应包括以下几项内容:

①介绍名字、年龄等基本信息

My/His/Her name is...

I am/He is/She is...years old.

②谈论兴趣爱好

My/His/Her hobby is...

③描写人物个性,让人加深印象

I am/He is/She is a(an)...person.

## 演练巡航



### 一、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

- Where is the artist (art) from?  
—He's from China.
- Each student learns English differently (different).
- Another child (children) talks to us in English.
- Every student (student) has a book.
- Is that a real (really) car?  
—No. It's a model car.
- He has straight brown hair and he doesn't wear glasses (glass).
- Let me tell you what he looks (look) like.
- When he walks on the street, everybody knows (know) him.

9. I'm thirsty now. I'd like some orange (orange) to drink.

10. My niece (侄女) is very talkative. She never stops talking (talk).

### 二、单项选择。

- ( C ) 1. My sister has a new \_\_\_\_\_. Now she has curly hair.  
A. hair                      B. good-looking  
C. look                      D. glasses
- ( B ) 2. The woman \_\_\_\_\_ long hair is our new teacher.  
A. in                          B. with  
C. on                          D. of
- ( D ) 3. Mr. Read, playing with the children, \_\_\_\_\_ a medium height.  
A. are                          B. is  
C. have                        D. has
- ( C ) 4. Mrs. Brown doesn't like pop songs, but her daughter \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. is                            B. do  
C. does                        D. like
- ( A ) 5. The job is interesting, \_\_\_\_\_ sometimes it is difficult.  
A. but                         B. and  
C. or                            D. because
- ( D ) 6. I often write e-mails to my pen pals, but \_\_\_\_\_ writes me back.  
A. everybody                B. somebody  
C. anybody                    D. nobody
- ( A ) 7. My aunt is too \_\_\_\_\_. She wants to be slim.  
A. heavy                      B. tall  
C. short                        D. thin
- ( C ) 8. He is medium build, but he looks \_\_\_\_\_.  
fat.  
A. a lot of                      B. a bit of  
C. a little                      D. a little of
- ( B ) 9. I have \_\_\_\_\_ to tell you, Miss White.  
A. important something  
B. something important  
C. important anything  
D. anything important

- ( A )10. —What about \_\_\_\_\_ swimming on weekends?  
—Good idea!  
A. going            B. go  
C. goes            D. to go

三、书面表达。

请描写你的家庭成员、朋友或老师，写出他(她)的外貌和穿着特征以及爱好等。

- 要求：1. 语句通顺，语意连贯；  
2. 60 个词左右。

Lucy is my friend. She is 14 years old. She's short and a little bit heavy. She has beautiful long black hair. She often wears a green T-shirt and black pants. She loves to tell jokes. They're really funny. She loves sports, too. She can play ping-pong very well. She also likes reading and singing.

# Unit 10

## I'd like some noodles.

### Period 1

### Section A (1a—2d)

#### 预习起航



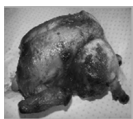
根据图片写出相应的食物名词。



1. potatoes



2. carrots



3. meat



4. cabbage



5. tomatoes



6. noodles

#### 名师导航



#### 1. would like

would like 意为“想要；希望”，相当于 want，但语气比 want 委婉一些。其中 would 是情态动词，没有人称和数的变化，在陈述句中常缩写为“'d”形式。

“Would you like some...?”意为“你想要某物吗？”，这是委婉地询问，句中用 some 而不用 any。肯定回答用“Yes, please.”，否定回答用“No, thanks.”。

I would like a cup of tea. 我想要一杯茶。

—Would you like some pears? 你想要一些梨吗？

—Yes, please. / No, thanks. 要。/不要，谢谢。

【拓展】would like to do sth. 想做某事

I'd like to go fishing this Sunday. 这个星

期天我想去钓鱼。

Would you like to dance with me? 你愿意和我跳舞吗？

#### 2. yet

yet 是副词，经常用于否定句或者疑问句的句尾。在肯定句中用 already, already 常放在句中，表惊讶时也可放句尾。

Are you ready yet? 你还没有准备好吗？

I'm not sure yet. 我还没确定呢。

You've had supper already! 你已经吃了晚饭！

I've already finished this book. 我已经读完了这本书。

#### 3. potato

potato 是可数名词，其复数形式为 potatoes。

【拓展】以 o 结尾的可数名词变复数时，有的可以直接加-s。这里教给大家一个巧记初中阶段以 o 结尾的可数名词变复数的方法：以 o 结尾的有生命的可数名词变复数形式加-es，无生命的可数名词变复数形式加-s。

tomato—tomatoes (西红柿)

hero—heroes (英雄)

photo—photos (照片)

potato—potatoes (土豆)

Negro—Negroes (黑人)

#### 4. a bowl of

a bowl of 意为“一碗……”。表示单位词的常见结构：“a + 单位词(单数) + of + 名词”。如：a bowl of rice(一碗米饭)，a bowl of noodles(一碗面条)。

这个结构也可以变成复数形式，即“单位词(复数) + of + 名词”。如：two bowls of rice(两碗米饭)，two bowls of noodles(两碗面条)。

## 演练巡航



一、根据汉语的提示完成下列句子。

- My grandparents like eating noodles (面条).
- I like tomatoes (西红柿) very much.
- There are many potatoes (土豆) in the basket.
- We had some specials (特色菜) today.
- Can I take your order (菜单)?

二、单项选择。

- ( A ) 1. He wants \_\_\_\_\_ some flowers in the garden.  
A. to plant            B. planting  
C. plant                D. plants
- ( C ) 2. —What would you like?  
—I'm not sure \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. already            B. still  
C. yet                  D. ever
- ( C ) 3. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ coffee?  
A. a few                B. many  
C. some                D. a lot

- ( D ) 4. —Would you like some water?  
—\_\_\_\_\_. I'd rather have a cup of juice.  
A. Yes, please        B. No problem  
C. That's OK         D. No, thanks

- ( B ) 5. —\_\_\_\_\_  
—Yes, I'd like some tea.  
A. Where are you  
B. Can I help you  
C. Who are you  
D. What do you do

- ( C ) 6. —What would you like to drink?  
—\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Fish                B. Noodles  
C. Milk                D. Beef

三、补全对话。

- A: 1. What can I do for you, sir?  
B: Yes, I 2. would like some noodles, please.  
A: What 3. kind of noodles would you like?  
B: I'd like beef and tomato noodles.  
A: OK. Beef and tomato noodles. What 4. size would you like? We have large, medium and small bowls.  
B: Well, a small one, please.  
A: For here 5. or to go?  
B: To go.

## Period 2

## Section A (Grammar Focus—3c)

## 预习起航



请朗读方框里的单词,并根据方框下面的要求完成预习任务。

bowl, apple, beef, chicken, carrot, meat, orange(橙汁), milk, salad, ice-cream, strawberry, mutton, water, cabbage, cake

请列出方框中的可数名词。

bowl apple strawberry carrot cabbage  
cake chicken salad ice-cream

请列出方框中的不可数名词。

beef chicken meat orange milk salad  
ice-cream mutton water cake

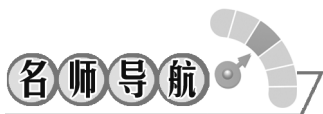
请列出方框中既是可数名词又是不可数名词的词。

chicken salad cake ice-cream

请写出方框中可数名词的复数形式。

bowls chickens apples carrots strawberries  
cabbages cakes salads ice-creams





### 1. 可数名词与不可数名词的用法

①可数名词:可数名词有单数和复数两种形式。复数形式一般要在词尾加-s或-es。

noodle—noodles pen—pens book—books  
potato—potatoes tomato—tomatoes

②不可数名词没有复数形式,只有单数形式。

some rice 一些米饭  
a lot of beef 许多牛肉

③不可数名词表示数量的多少时,必须与表示数量的名词连用,即“数词+表示数量的名词(可数名词)+of+不可数名词”。

five cups of juice 五杯果汁  
six bowls of rice 六碗米饭

④不可数名词作主语时,谓语动词只能用单数形式。

The beef soup is delicious. 牛肉汤很美味。

【拓展】如果不可数名词前有复数名词短语修饰时,谓语动词须用复数形式。

There are two cups of water on the table.  
桌上有两杯水。

### 2. kind

①kind作名词时,意为“种类”,常用于以下结构:

a kind of 一种  
all kinds of 各种各样的  
what kind of 哪一种

What kind of eggs do you want? 你想要哪种鸡蛋?

What kind of clothes do you like? 你喜欢哪种类型的衣服?

We have all kinds of vegetables. 我们有各种各样的蔬菜。

②kind of意为“有点儿”,相当于a little。  
I'm kind of hungry. 我有点儿饿了。

③kind作形容词,意为“好心的;友爱的;和蔼的”。

### 3. sure

sure是形容词,意为“确信的;肯定的”,主

要用法如下:

①be sure of (sth.)意为“确信;对……有把握”。

Are you sure of your answer? Maybe it's wrong. 你对你的答案有把握吗?也许它是错的。

②be sure to do意为“一定会/确定会……”。

Lucy is sure to win. 露西一定会赢。

③be sure that+从句,意为“确信……”。

I am sure that Dad will help me with the job. 我确信爸爸会帮着我做这项工作的。

### 4. special

①用作形容词,意为“专门的;特殊的;特别的”。

He is a special man. 他是一个特别的人。

Please say something special. 请说点特别的事情吧。

②用作名词,是可数名词,意为“特色菜;特价品”。

There are many specials at our restaurant. 我们餐馆有许多特色菜。

### 5. what size

what size意为“多大的;多大尺寸的”,用来询问大小、尺码。

—What size of the shirt do you want? 你要多大尺寸的衬衫?

—I want a large one. 我要一件大号的。

【拓展】表示型号大小的词:small小号,medium中号,large大号。



#### 一、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

- Many people think potatoes (potato) are very delicious.
- There are many different kinds (kind) of vegetables over there.
- May I take your (you) order?
- I'm not sure (not sure) if she'll win.
- Are there any specials (special) in your hotel?

6. What size (size) of the shoes would you like?
7. I'd like some water (water).
8. I like rice. But my sister doesn't like (not like) it.
9. Bring me some apples (apple), and I want to make apple juice.
10. Beef is (be) my favorite food.

## 二、补全对话。

Waiter: Welcome to our restaurant. 1. This way, please! May I take your 2. order ?

Harry: Yes. Are there any 3. specials at your restaurant?

Waiter: Yes. There 4. is fish, chicken soup and mutton soup.

Harry: OK. Can I have one 5. bowl of chicken soup, please?

Waiter: Sure. What 6. size do you like?

Harry: Small, please. I'd also like some 7. vegetables with rice.

Waiter: OK. One bowl of chicken soup and some vegetables with rice.

## Period 3

## Section B (1a-1d)



翻译下列句子。

1. 您好,我想订些食物。

Hello! I want to order some food, please.

2. ——你想要什么样的饺子?

——我想要牛肉和胡萝卜饺子。

—What kind of dumplings would you like?

—Beef and carrot dumplings, please.

3. 你的地址和电话号码是什么?

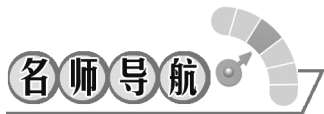
What's your address and telephone number?

4. 我喜欢饺子、鱼和橙汁。

I like dumplings, fish and orange juice.

5. 我不喜欢洋葱、绿茶和粥。

I don't like onions, green tea or porridge.



### 1. fish

fish 用作可数名词表示“鱼的条数”时,单复数形式相同,如 two fish(两条鱼);指鱼的种类时,复数形式为 fishes,如 two fishes(两种鱼);用作不可数名词时,意为“鱼肉”。

Help yourself to some fish. 请随便吃些鱼。

### 2. or 与 and

and 和 or 都可用作连词,连接两个并列成分,表示“和”。and 通常用在肯定句中,or 常用于否定句和疑问句中,两者通常不能互换。

Does he like milk or bread? 他喜欢牛奶或者面包吗?

选择疑问句中的并列成分用 or 连接,意为“或者;还是”。

Is he a doctor or a teacher? 他是医生还是教师?

What would you like, tea or coffee? 你想要什么,茶还是咖啡?

但有时 and 也可用于否定句中。

There is no air and no water on the moon. 月球上既没有空气,也没有水。(句中的 and no 可以看作是 or)

### 3. large 与 big

①big 最通俗、常用,强调比正常程度、范围及规模的标准大,常用于修饰人、物或数量。反义词是 little 和 small。

They were all very big and strong. 他们个个高大强壮。

China is a big country. 中国是个大国。(强调实力)

②large 强调远远超过标准的大,可指数量、容量、体积和面积的大,比 big 正式,反义词是 small。

Shall we go to the largest island or the smallest one? 我们去最大的岛还是去最小

的岛?

China is a large and beautiful country. 中国是个大而美丽的国家。(强调面积)



### 一、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. Would you like to have (have) supper with me?
2. Mary wants to order (order) a bowl of noodles.
3. They had some fish (fish) on the menu this morning.
4. Would you like to have a cup of coffee or (and) tea?
5. What kind (kind) of food does her friend like?

### 二、根据要求完成句子。

1. He'd like a large bowl of noodles. (对画线部分提问)  
What size bowl of noodles would he like?
2. They'd like chicken and carrot rice. (对画线部分提问)  
What kind of rice would they like?
3. There is a book and two pens. (改为否定句)  
There isn't a book and two pens.
4. I would like to go to Hong Kong. (改为同义句)  
I want to go to Hong Kong.

### 三、单项选择。

- ( C ) 1. —I don't like chicken \_\_\_\_\_ fish.  
—I don't like chicken, \_\_\_\_\_ I like fish very much.  
A. and; and            B. and; but  
C. or; but              D. or; and
- ( A ) 2. I'd like some \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. beef                  B. potato  
C. noodle                D. bowl
- ( C ) 3. —Would you like some milk?  
—\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Yes, I would        B. No, I wouldn't  
C. Yes, please         D. Thanks
- ( B ) 4. What size bowl of dumplings would you like, small, medium \_\_\_\_\_ large?  
A. but                    B. or  
C. and                    D. so
- ( B ) 5. —What size shirt would you like?  
—A \_\_\_\_\_ one.  
A. red                    B. large  
C. new                    D. long
- ( A ) 6. There \_\_\_\_\_ some food on the table.  
A. is                      B. are  
C. has                    D. have
- ( C ) 7. I'm hungry. I would like \_\_\_\_\_ a large bowl of dumplings.  
A. eating                B. eat  
C. to eat                 D. ate
- ( A ) 8. Would you like some tea \_\_\_\_\_ ice in it?  
A. with                    B. of  
C. in                      D. for

## Period 4

## Section B (2a—2c)



### 一、根据课文内容回答下列问题。

1. What countries does the writer talk about?  
The UK and China.
2. What kind of food does the writer talk about?

Birthday cake, long noodles and eggs.

3. What do long noodles mean?

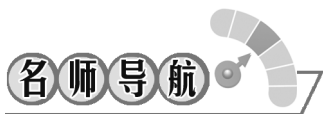
Long noodles mean long life.

4. What do eggs mean?

Eggs mean life and good luck.

二、根据课文内容猜测下列单词或词组的含义，并用每个词组造一个英语句子。

- the number of ……的数量  
The number of the stars in the sky is so large.
- make a wish 许愿  
On my birthday I always make a big wish.
- come true 实现  
I believe that all my dreams will come true.
- popular 流行;受欢迎  
Mr. Li is so popular that we all love him.



### 1. the number of

the number of 意为“……的数量”，后面接可数名词复数。作主语时，谓语动词应用单数形式。

The number of our school's students is 2,500. 我们学校的学生数量是 2,500。

【拓展】a number of 意为“许多”，后面接可数名词的复数，相当于 many；作主语时，谓语动词应该用复数形式。表示数量的多和少时，则用 large 或 small 修饰 number。

A number of pandas are black and white. 许多熊猫都是黑白相间的。

### 2. different

different 是形容词，意为“差异的；不同的”。

She offered us five different kinds of cake. 她给我们提供了五种不同的蛋糕。

different 后面一般接介词 from，有时也接 to(英)或 than(美)，但均不及用 from 普遍。

City life is very different from/to/than country life. 城市生活与农村生活很不相同。

副词 much 通常不修饰形容词原级，但 different 是个例外，它可由 much 来修饰。

He is much different from you. 他与你大不相同。

其他修饰 different 的常见副词如下例：

This is quite different from that. 这个与那个很不相同。

【拓展】different 的名词形式是 difference，副词形式是 differently，反义词是 same。

### 3. popular

popular 是形容词，意为“流行的；普通的；受大众欢迎的”。

I like popular music best. 我最喜欢流行音乐。

be popular with 是一个常用短语，意为“受……欢迎”。

Lucky is very popular with everyone because it is very friendly. 幸运很受大家欢迎，因为它很友好。

### 4. idea

idea 是名词，意为“主意；想法”。

Do you have any ideas? 你有什么好主意吗？

I had a good idea. = A good idea came to me. 我有了一个好主意。

—Let's go for a walk. 让我们去散散步吧。

—That's a good idea! = Good idea! 好主意！

注意：简略回答中常用“Good idea”。代替 That's a good idea.。

I have no idea. = I don't know. 我不知道。

### 5. if

if 是连词，意为“如果”，引导条件状语从句。在 if 引导的条件状语从句中，主句用一般将来时，从句要用一般现在时表将来。

If it rains, we will stay at home next Sunday. 下个星期天如果下雨，我们将待在家里。



### 一、单项选择。

- ( B ) 1. My room is different \_\_\_\_\_ Lucy's.  
A. with                      B. from  
C. of                          D. in
- ( A ) 2. The number of the machines \_\_\_\_\_ small.  
A. is                          B. are  
C. am                         D. do
- ( C ) 3. A number of students \_\_\_\_\_ late for school today.  
A. is                          B. am

- C. are                      D. do
- ( D ) 4. If it \_\_\_\_\_, we will go skating.
- A. snowed  
B. snowing  
C. snow  
D. snows
- ( B ) 5. Our English teacher is \_\_\_\_\_ with us.  
Everybody loves her.
- A. busy                      B. popular  
C. interesting              D. funny

## 二、阅读理解。

A Frenchman wants to eat eggs in a restaurant. But he doesn't know how to say eggs in English. He thinks and thinks. Then he sees a book with a picture of a hen(母鸡) on the table. He asks the woman in the restaurant, "What's the English for a hen's child?" The woman says, "It's a chick(小鸡)." Then the Frenchman asks, "What's a chick before they are born?" "It's an egg," says the woman. "That's right. Give me four eggs, please."

- ( D ) 1. What does the Frenchman want to eat?
- A. Hens.                      B. Chicks.  
C. Fruit.                      D. Eggs.
- ( A ) 2. Where does the Frenchman go?
- A. To the restaurant.  
B. To the supermarket.  
C. To the store.

- D. To the station.
- ( B ) 3. What does the Frenchman see on the table?
- A. A book with a picture of chicks.  
B. A book with a picture of a hen.  
C. A book with a picture of a man.  
D. A book with a picture of an egg.
- ( D ) 4. Who does the Frenchman ask for help?
- A. A man.                      B. A child.  
C. A teacher.                  D. A woman.
- ( C ) 5. How many eggs does the Frenchman want?
- A. One.                      B. Five.  
C. Four.                      D. Six.

## 三、选词填空。

others   strawberries   fruits   different   house  
specials   kind   please   bananas   only

There are many kinds of fruits in the supermarket this week. What kind of fruit would you like, apples, oranges, strawberries, bananas or others? Different people may like different fruit.

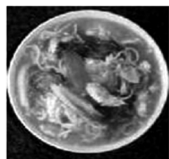
Look at this fruit house. Today we have some great specials. The apples in Yantai are only 8 yuan a kilo. The bananas, for 4 yuan a kilo and the oranges in Sichuan are 3 yuan a kilo. Strawberries are 6 yuan a kilo. So please go to the supermarket.

## Period 5

## Section B (3a—Self Check)



广告公司为 House of Noodles 设计了一则广告,但有些信息丢失了,请你预习课文,并借助广告公司提供的词汇或图片补全广告信息。



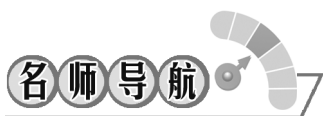
also  
have  
large  
noodles  
dumplings

### House of Noodles

At the House of Noodles, we 1. have some great specials!

- > chicken and cabbage
- > mutton and potato
- > 2. dumplings and eggs

And what size of noodles would you like? Small, medium or 3. large. We 4. also have orange juice and green tea. Come and get your 5. noodles.



### 1. also, too 与 either

also, too, either 都意为“也”，但用法不同。

①also 较为正式，位于句中，常位于系动词、情态动词、助动词之后，实义动词之前。

She is also a member of the football club. 她也是足球俱乐部的成员。

He also likes smiling. 他也喜欢笑。

②too 多用于肯定句，常位于句尾，前面用逗号与句子隔开。在简略回答中，too 常位于人称代词宾格之后。

Li Lei is a student, too. 李雷也是一个学生。

He loves his mother. Me, too. 他爱他的妈妈，我也爱我的妈妈。

③either 意为“也”，用于否定句，一般位于句末。

I don't like noodles, either. 我也不喜欢吃面条。

### 2. short

short 意为“短的”，反义词为 long，比较级为 shorter，最高级为 shortest；意为“矮的”，反义词为 tall，比较级为 shorter，最高级为 shortest；意为“不足的”，常构成短语 be short of 缺乏。

He is tall but she is short. 他很高，但她很矮。

短语 in short 意为“简而言之”。for short 意为“简称为；简称为”，与 be short for 同义。

In short, what you said is true. 简而言之，你说的是事实。

short 还有“短裤”的意思，且常用复数形式。

### 3. 本单元写作指导

本单元的写作话题是介绍自己喜欢吃的食物，体裁为说明文。在描述时应注意以下两个方面：

①文章的结构

总起描述食物的种类，然后具体描述食物

的外观、味道等，最后说明自己喜欢这种食物的理由或它给你带来的好处。

②常用表达句型

would like..., We have... for..., ... is very good/delicious. 等。



### 一、选词填空。

salad medium order juice address also

Lily arrived in Shanghai very late. She was tired. So she telephoned the Hotel to order some noodles. She didn't want a big one. She wanted a medium bowl of the noodles and one small orange juice. She said she likes salad, too. She also told them her address. They will send her noodles in half an hour.

### 二、连词成句，注意括号中的标点符号。

1. he, like, what, would (?)

What would he like?

2. dumplings, like, please, the, we'd, beef (.)

We'd like the beef dumplings, please.

3. apples, some, like, would, he (.)

He would like some apples.

4. many, there, are, on the table, tea, cups of (?)

Are there many cups of tea on the table?

5. my, father, lunch, fish, much, has, for (.)

My father has much fish for lunch.

6. vegetables, have, some, like, to, you, would (?)

Would you like to have some vegetables?

### 三、单项选择。

( B ) 1. —What's his favorite vegetable?

- \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. Eggs                      B. Cabbages  
C. Bananas                  D. Dumplings

( B ) 2. I can't read fast. I can't spell some English words, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. also                      B. either  
C. but                        D. too

( A ) 3. What would you like \_\_\_\_\_ supper?



- A. for                      B. on  
C. at                         D. with

- ( C ) 4. The girl was too \_\_\_\_\_. She has to stand up to look at the blackboard.  
A. busy                      B. big  
C. short                      D. tall

四、书面表达。

根据你一日三餐所吃的食物,描述一种你最爱吃的。

- 要求: 1. 文中须合理使用 would like..., have... for... 等结构;  
2. 须包含所给信息,可适当发挥;

3. 60 个词左右。

Would you like some dumplings? You can often hear these words if you visit a friend's house during the Spring Festival. Dumplings are Chinese traditional food. They are delicious. Many people like eating dumplings. Dumplings are also my favorite food. I often have them for breakfast. I think they are nice and they are good for my health.

---

---

---



# Unit 11

## How was your school trip?

### Period 1

### Section A (1a—2d)

#### 预习起航



一、翻译下列短语。

- 散步 go for a walk
- 给奶牛挤奶 milk a cow
- 骑马 ride a horse
- 喂鸡 feed the chickens
- 和农民交谈 talk with farmers
- 拍照 take photos

二、翻译下列句子。

- 你昨天做了什么事?  
What did you do yesterday?
- 你看见了一些奶牛吗?  
Did you see any cows?

#### 名师导航



##### 1. anything

anything 是不定代词,意为“任何事情;任何东西”,常用于否定句及疑问句中,与 something 同义,但 something 常用于肯定句中。

There's something wrong with your eyes.  
你的眼睛有点问题。

Is there anything important in today's newspaper? 今天的报纸上有什么重要的事情吗?

##### 2. show

①用作名词时,意为“展览;表演;节目”。

I like talk show on TV. It's very interesting.  
我喜欢电视上的脱口秀节目。这个节目很有

意思。

②用作动词时,意为“展示;演示”。常用的结构:show sb. sth. 或 show sth. to sb. 意为“向某人展示某物”;show sb. around sth. 意为“领某人参观某地”。

She showed me some beautiful photos. 她给我看了一些漂亮的照片。

He showed his mother around his new house. 他领他的妈妈参观了他的新房子。

##### 3. How was your school trip? 你的学校旅行怎么样?

“How + be + ...?”意为“……怎么样?”,相当于“What + be + ... + like?”。

How is your new teacher? = What is your new teacher like? 你的新老师怎么样?

#### 演练巡航



一、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

- My grandpa has a farm. He is a farmer (farm).
- He went (go) shopping yesterday.
- Did you feed (feed) the chickens last night?
- She was ill. She didn't want to eat anything (something).
- My father likes to go fishing (fish) on Sundays.

二、单项选择。

( A ) 1. —        you milk the cow?

— Yes, I       .

A. Did; did                      B. Do; do

- C. Do; did                      D. Did; do
- ( A )2. —Can you give me something interesting to read?  
—\_\_\_\_\_.
- A. Of course                      B. Sorry, I can't  
C. That's all right                D. Yes, I can
- ( B )3. The kids learned a lot about \_\_\_\_\_ on this \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. farm; farm                      B. farming; farm  
C. farmer; farm                    D. farm; farming
- ( C )4. —\_\_\_\_\_ the weather like in your city last Sunday?  
—Fine.
- A. What's                              B. How is  
C. What was                          D. How was
- ( D )5. —Did you see any pandas?  
—Yes. I \_\_\_\_\_ some in the zoo.
- A. did                                      B. see  
C. do                                        D. saw

### 三、补全对话。

- Alice: Hey, Joy! 1. How was your holiday ?  
Joy: My holiday was wonderful. I went traveling, you know.  
Alice: Wow. 2. Where did you go ?

- Joy: Well, I went to Singapore.  
Alice: 3. Were the people friendly ?  
Joy: Yes, they showed us around their country, and cooked food for us.  
Alice: Really? 4. How was the food there ?  
Joy: Delicious. I like the special noodles very much.  
Alice: 5. Did you take any photos there ?  
Joy: Of course. If you like, I can show my photos to you tomorrow.  
Alice: That will be very nice. Thank you!  
Joy: You're welcome.

### 四、根据汉语意思完成句子。

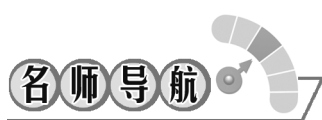
- 她学到了许多关于种树的知识。  
She learned a lot about tree planting.
- 我拜访了我在农村的叔叔。  
I visited my uncle in the countryside .
- 昨天的天气怎么样?  
How was the weather yesterday?
- 你能带我参观你的学校吗?  
Can you show me around your school?
- 皮特昨天没有骑马。  
Peter didn't ride a horse yesterday.

## Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus—3b)



写出下列句子的时态。

1. She is writing a letter. 现在进行时
2. Does he like apples? 一般现在时
3. My mother didn't go to the supermarket. 一般过去时
4. Were the movies interesting? 一般过去时
5. My grandma milks the cow every day. 一般现在时



### 1. worry

worry 用作不及物动词时,意为“担心;着急;焦虑”,常与介词 about 连用,意为“对……感到担心”;形容词为 worried,意为“担心的;焦急的”。

Tom, don't worry about your pet dog. 汤姆,不用担心你的宠物狗。

I was worried about my little daughter very much last night. 我昨天晚上非常担心我的女儿。

### 2. 一般过去时

①定义

一般过去时表示过去的某个时间发生的动作或存在的状态，常和表示过去的时间状语连用。

### ② 构成

be 动词	am/is—was; are—were
实义动词	一般在词尾加-ed
	以字母 e 结尾的直接加-d
	以“辅音+y”结尾的，改 y 为 i，再加-ed
	末尾只有一个辅音字母的重读闭音节单词，先双写这个辅音字母再加-ed
	不规则变化(见课本后不规则动词表)

### ③ 句型

含 be 动词	否定句：在 was/ were 的后面加 not
	一般疑问句：把 was/ were 置于主语之前
实义动词	肯定句：主语 + 动词过去式 + 其他
	否定句：主语 + didn't + 动词原形 + 其他
	一般疑问句：Did + 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他
	特殊疑问句：疑问词 + did + 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他

She was very angry with her son. 她对她的儿子非常生气。

The teacher took out an old novel. 老师拿出一本旧的小说。

We didn't see him just now. 我们刚才没有看见他。

Did your father give you money in the morning? 你爸爸早上给你钱了吗?

Where did you have the party? 你们在哪里举行的聚会?



### 一、写出下列动词的过去式。

go went                  study studied  
 read read                  is was  
 put put                    learn learned/learnt  
 ride rode                  pick picked  
 feed fed                    take took

### 二、单项选择。

- ( C ) 1. Luckily, I \_\_\_\_\_ my key at last.  
 A. find                      B. will find  
 C. found                    D. can find
- ( A ) 2. Bill and his father \_\_\_\_\_ last night.  
 A. went hiking          B. went hike  
 C. go hiking              D. went to hiking
- ( C ) 3. Traveling is \_\_\_\_\_ fun. I like it.  
 A. many                    B. a lot  
 C. a lot of                  D. little
- ( D ) 4. —What did your brother do last Tuesday?  
 —He \_\_\_\_\_ computer games with me.  
 A. plays                    B. was playing  
 C. is playing              D. played
- ( B ) 5. My mother \_\_\_\_\_ my test yesterday.  
 A. worries  
 B. worried about  
 C. worries about  
 D. was worrying

### 三、根据要求完成句子。

1. She was so lucky that she caught the last bus.  
 (改为同义句)  
Luckily, she caught the last bus.
2. Bob writes a letter to his pen pal. (用 yesterday 改写)  
 Bob wrote a letter to his pen pal yesterday.
3. Lucy picked some apples on the farm. (对画线部分提问)  
 What did Lucy do on the farm?
4. My uncle grew a lot of grapes last year. (改为否定句)  
 My uncle didn't grow a lot of grapes last

year.

5. Peter read an interesting story last week. (改为一般疑问句)

Did Peter read an interesting story last week?

#### 四、完形填空。

How was your last weekend? Lily had a very busy 1 interesting weekend. On Saturday morning, she 2 with her dog. It was her hobby and it's very 3. At ten o'clock, she 4 shopping with her sister. It was their mother's birthday 5. They wanted to buy presents for her. On Sunday morning, they cooked delicious noodles 6 their mother. It was a symbol of 7. In the afternoon, they had a birthday party. They gave the presents 8 their mother. All of them 9 very happy. In the evening, Lily 10 a diary to remember that day.

( C )1. A. and B. or

C. but D. of

( A )2. A. took a walk B. go for a walk

C. walk D. walks

( B )3. A. health B. healthy

C. healthily D. unhealthy

( B )4. A. goes B. went

C. goes to D. went to

( D )5. A. today B. this day

C. tomorrow D. the next day

( D )6. A. to B. with

C. of D. for

( A )7. A. long life B. good luck

C. lucky D. happy

( B )8. A. for B. to

C. with D. of

( D )9. A. are B. is

C. was D. were

( C )10. A. wrote B. read

C. kept D. made

### Period 3

### Section B (1a-1d)

#### 预习起航



根据你的实际情况回答下列问题。

1. Where did you go last weekend?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. How was the weather like?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. What did you do?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. How was your weekend?

\_\_\_\_\_

#### 名师导航



##### 1. painting

painting 用作名词,有可数和不可数之分。作可数名词时,意为“绘画作品”;作不可数名词时,意为“绘画;粉刷”。

There is a large oil-painting of Queen Victoria on the wall. 墙上悬挂着维多利亚女王的大幅油画。(作可数名词)

She had two hobbies, painting and gardening. 她的两大爱好是绘画和园艺。(作不可数名词)

##### 2. fire

①用作名词时,意为“火;火灾”。常用的短语:fire station 消防站, on fire 着火, make a fire 生火。

Some people died in a fire at the club. 有人在那个会所的火灾中丧生。

②用作动词时,意为“烧火;点燃;射击”。

It is difficult to fire wet twigs. 湿的小树枝很难点燃。

They fired at the enemy. 他们朝敌人开火。



一、单项选择。

- ( C ) 1. He usually \_\_\_\_\_ his aunt on weekends, but last weekend he \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. visited; doesn't  
B. visits; doesn't  
C. visits; didn't  
D. visited; didn't
- ( B ) 2. Peter had dinner and \_\_\_\_\_ a movie with Lucy yesterday evening.
- A. see                      B. saw  
C. seeing                  D. to see
- ( B ) 3. She is singing a beautiful English song. Please be quiet and \_\_\_\_\_ her.
- A. listen                  B. listen to  
C. listened                D. listened to
- ( D ) 4. I have to do my homework. I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ time to watch TV.
- A. many too              B. much too  
C. too many              D. too much
- ( B ) 5. Children are \_\_\_\_\_ to watch that \_\_\_\_\_ 3D cartoon movie.
- A. excited; excited  
B. excited; exciting  
C. exciting; excited  
D. exciting; exciting

- ( A ) 6. She learned \_\_\_\_\_ cooking.
- A. a lot about      B. a lot  
C. many from      D. much

二、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. We are interested (interesting) in all kinds of stamps.
2. She got to school so fast (fast).
3. Can you teach me how to send (send) email?
4. They were (be) not at home at 9 yesterday morning.
5. What about visiting (visit) Thailand?

三、根据汉语意思完成句子。

1. 两年前我在镇上的一所中学教书。  
I taught in a middle school in town two years ago.
2. 昨天晚上我没有玩电脑游戏。  
I didn't play computer games yesterday evening.
3. 他现在不能去打篮球,因为他有太多的作业要做。  
He can't play basketball now because he has too much homework to do.
4. 我姐姐昨天看了一本关于中国历史的有趣的书。  
My sister read an interesting book about Chinese history.
5. 你喂了鸡还是挤了牛奶?  
Did you feed the chickens or milk the cow?

Period 4

Section B (2a—2c)



阅读 2b 的日记,回答下列问题。

1. Where did Helen go on the trip?  
She visited the science museum.
2. Did Helen sleep on the way to the museum?  
No, she didn't.

3. What did Helen do after visiting the museum?  
She went to buy some gifts for her parents in a gift shop.
4. What does Jim think of the train?  
He thinks it was hot and slow.
5. Did Jim take photos? Why?  
No, he didn't. Because the rooms were dark and it was difficult to take photos.





friends from Hong Kong.

5. I heard (hear) Tina reading English this morning.

四、从方框中选择合适的单词,并用其适当形式填空。

trip great wash excite talk  
quite river lunch with arrive

It was Saturday. The weather was not bad. The students of Class Three went out for a trip. They went by bus with fruits, vegetables, meat, cookers and some other things.

At about half past ten, they arrived at

the foot of a hill. There was a clean river and many green trees there. Birds were singing and the air was very clean. Some of the students were washing the vegetables in the river. Some were making fire. After an hour, the lunch was ready.

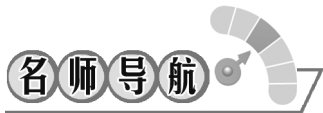
After lunch, they had a great time singing, dancing, drinking and talking. At three o'clock, they began to climb the hill. The hill was quite tall, but they all tried to climb to the top of it. On the top of the hill, they felt very excited.

## Period 5 Section B (3a—Self Check)



回忆某一次外出旅游的经历,完成下面的信息表。

My trip to _____	
place	
time	
weather	
activities	
partners(伙伴)	
feelings	



### 1. quite a lot

quite a lot 意为“相当多”。如要表示“相当多的……”时,后面加 of 引导的介词短语,of 后面可以跟可数名词,也可以跟不可数名词。

I saw quite a lot of cows. 我看见了许多奶牛。

We drank quite a lot of milk. 我们喝了很多牛奶。

【拓展】quite a few, quite a little 与 quite a lot 意思相同,但在表示“相当多的……”时,quite a few 后面直接接可数名词,quite a little 后面直接接不可数名词。

There is quite a little water in the bottle.

瓶子里还有相当多的水。

Quite a few students were late. 相当多的学生迟到了。

### 2. I think today's school trip was terrible. 我觉得今天学校的出游挺糟糕的。

表示有生命的东西的名词及某些表示时间、距离、星球、世界、国家等无生命的东西的名词后加 's 表示所有关系,叫做名词所有格。如:men's room 男厕所,a mile's distance 一米的距离。

但如果该名词是以-s 或-es 接尾,则只在该名词后加“'”来构成所有格。如:3 hours' walk 3 小时的路程,two miles' distance 两米的距离,five minutes' ride 骑车 5 分钟的路程。

### 3. no 作形容词的用法

no (形容词)+单数可数名词/不可数名词 = not a/an +单数可数名词 = not...any +复数可数名词/不可数名词

There is no bridge over the river. = There isn't a bridge over the river. 那条河上没有桥。

He has no brothers or sisters. = He doesn't have any brothers or sisters. 他没有兄弟姐妹。

There is no meat in the fridge. = There is not any meat in the fridge. 冰箱里没有肉。

### 4. 本单元写作指导

本单元的写作话题是描述过去的一次经历,体裁为记叙文。在写作时应注意以下两个



方面:

①文章的结构

首先,开篇开门见山交代经历;其次,具体叙述这次经历中的天气、同伴、做的事情或者活动(注意要用过去时);最后,说说自己此次经历的感受或者收获。

②常用表达句型

I went to...

I went to... with...

The weather there was...

We had a great time...

I like this... very much. It was a great day!

演练巡航



一、单项选择。

- ( B ) 1. —Were there any seals in the zoo last year?  
—No, there were \_\_\_\_\_, but there are some now.  
A. no                      B. not  
C. few                      D. little
- ( D ) 2. I was very busy with my homework last night. I had quite \_\_\_\_\_ to do. It was so boring and hard work!  
A. a little                B. a few  
C. many                    D. a lot
- ( B ) 3. —I'll give you \_\_\_\_\_ to finish the work.  
—OK.  
A. two week's time  
B. two weeks' time  
C. two week time  
D. two weeks time
- ( A ) 4. \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday morning, she began to learn English.  
A. On                      B. In  
C. At                        D. For
- ( A ) 5. Where are my keys? I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ them.  
A. find                      B. look for  
C. buy                        D. watch

二、补全对话。

Tim: Hi, Linda! Did you go on the school trip? I didn't see you on Sunday.

Linda: 1. No, I stayed at home.

Tim: Why?

Linda: 2. Because I had lots of things to do.

Tim: What did you do?

Linda: I cleaned my room and did my homework.

3. Then I studied for the test.

Tim: Really? The test is not much fun!

Linda: 4. Well, it wasn't very bad. I went to a movie with my sister on Sunday afternoon. 5. What about you? Was the school trip interesting?

Tim: Yes. We went to the Children's Palace in the morning. We saw some beautiful performances there. We went to the science museum in the afternoon. We took many photos there. That was really great!

三、书面表达。

假定去年暑假你和父母去了香港旅游,请根据“预习起航”中的表格内容写一篇短文,描述此次旅游的经历。

- 要求:1. 文章中须合理使用一般过去时;  
2. 文章须包含所给信息,可适当发挥;  
3. 80 个词左右。

Last summer, I went to Hong Kong with my parents. We went there by plane. The flight was exciting, because it was my first time to take a plane. When we got there, the weather was sunny and warm. We stayed in Hong Kong for 7 days. On the first day, we went to the Ocean Park. We watched so many sea animals, they are so lovely. But I like the dolphins best, they were really clever. Then we went to the Disneyland, it was fantastic. I took photos with some Disney characters. How exciting! Of course, we also went shopping there. It was shopping paradise.

I really like this vacation. I want to go to Hong Kong again next year.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

# Unit 12

## What did you do last weekend?

### Period 1

### Section A (1a—2d)

#### 预习起航



请找三位同学做个小调查,了解他们上周末的活动情况。

Names	What he/she did
如: Zhang Ming	did her homework

#### 名师导航



#### 1. go + v. -ing

此结构表示“去(干)……”。类似结构的短语有 go swimming(去游泳), go shopping(去购物), go fishing(去钓鱼), go skating(去滑冰), 等等。

It's too hot. Shall we go swimming? 天气太热了,我们去游泳吧?

#### 2. as

as 作介词时,意为“以……身份;作为”,后面通常接表示身份或职业的名词。

Does she work as a cleaner in our company? 她是作为清洁工在我们公司工作吗?

She worked as my tutor on the weekend. 她周末担任我的家教。

#### 3. stay up late

stay up late 为动词短语,意为“熬夜”。

He stayed up late every night to finish this task last month. 他上个月为了完成这项任务每天熬夜。

【拓展】常见的由 up 组成的短语:

look up(查阅) shut up(闭嘴) cut up(切碎)  
get up(起床) give up(放弃) take up(占据;从事)

My mother gets up at 5:30 to cook breakfast for me every morning. 我妈妈每天早上 5:30 起床为我做早餐。

She cut up the bananas and put them into the blender. 她把香蕉切碎,然后放进搅拌机。

#### 4. sheep

sheep 意为“羊;绵羊”,复数形式仍是 sheep。

#### 演练巡航



#### 一、单项选择。

- ( C ) 1. My grandfather works \_\_\_\_\_ a farmer on a farm.  
A. for                      B. of  
C. as                        D. with
- ( A ) 2. There are three \_\_\_\_\_ in the picture.  
A. sheep                    B. cow  
C. horse                    D. dog
- ( D ) 3. —Where \_\_\_\_\_ you yesterday evening?  
—I \_\_\_\_\_ in a net bar.  
A. were; am                B. are; am  
C. are; was                D. were; was
- ( C ) 4. —Did she visit the new school?  
—\_\_\_\_\_. She said it was great.  
A. Yes, she does  
B. No, she didn't

C. Yes, she did

D. No, she doesn't

- ( B ) 5. My father was \_\_\_\_\_ after traveling, so he went to sleep early.
- A. lazy                      B. tired  
C. lucky                      D. tiring

### 二、补全对话。

W: Hi, Mike!

M: Hi, Linda! 1. How was your weekend ?

W: Not bad.

M: Well, 2. where did you go ?

W: I went to Qingdao.

M: Then 3. how did you go there ?

W: I took a train there. And what did you do, Mike?

M: 4. I cleaned my house .

W: Why did you clean your house?

M: I had a birthday party. So my house was very dirty.

W: Really? 5. Did you enjoy yourself ?

M: Yes, I had a good time. But I was tired after the party.

### 三、从方框中选择恰当的单词或短语,并用其适

### 当形式填空。

visitor	sheep	with	start	nature	clean
stay up late	live	camp	mouse		

- Why were you late for class today?  
—I stayed up late and didn't get up in the morning.
- The guide showed the three visitors around the museum.
- I started to do my homework on Sunday afternoon.
- This animal has a special living habit.
- I like that house with a big swimming pool very much.
- It's sunny tomorrow. Shall we go camping with our friends?
- There are three mice in that rubbish can.
- Everyone likes the beauty of the nature .
- My grandfather kept five sheep on the farm last year.
- Do you often help your mother clean the floor on the weekend?

## Period 2

## Section A (Grammar Focus—3c)

### 预习起航



根据以下提示,与同伴编写一段对话谈论周末活动,内容要求涉及活动的时间、地点、人物和感受。

A: What did you do last weekend?

B: I played...

A: Where did you...?

B: ...

### 名师导航



#### 1. lost

lost 为动词 lose 的过去式,意为“丢失”。

I lost my math book this morning. 今天早

上我的数学书丢了。

【拓展】sth. be lost/get lost 某物丢失了 sb. be lost/get lost 某人迷路了

Her bicycle was lost last month, and she bought a new one last week. 她的自行车上个月丢了,上周她买了一辆新的。

She got lost because she is new here. 她迷路了,因为她是新来的。

#### 2. shout

shout 用作不及物动词,意为“喊叫”。

“Don't open the window!” he shouted. 他大声喊道:“不要开窗户!”

【辨析】shout at... 与 shout to...

shout at... 意为“冲……大声叫嚷”; shout to... 意为“对……大声喊叫”。

It's not polite to shout at others in public.  
在公众场合对别人大喊大叫是不礼貌的。

Tom shouted to that old man in order that he could hear him. 汤姆对那位老人大声喊叫, 以便老人能听见他说话。

### 3. run away

run away 意为“逃跑”。

When the teacher asked him, he has already run away. 当老师叫他时, 他已经逃跑了。

【拓展】①run out of 意为“从……跑出来”。

My sister opened the door and ran out of the room quickly. 我妹妹打开门, 快速地从房里跑出来了。

②run away from 意为“从……逃跑”。

That snake ran away from the cage yesterday evening. 那条蛇昨天晚上从笼子里逃跑了。

### 4. 一般过去时的特殊疑问句

①疑问词在句中作主语时, 句型结构为“疑问词 + was/ were + 其他?” 或者“疑问词 + 动词过去式 + 其他?”

Who was your P. E. teacher last term? 上个学期谁是你的体育老师?

Who cleaned the kitchen yesterday? 昨天谁打扫的厨房?

②疑问词在句中作宾语或者状语时, 句型结构为“疑问词 + was/ were + 主语 + 其他” 或者“疑问词 + did + 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他”。

When was his birthday? 他的生日是什么时候?

Where did you go on your holiday? 你去哪里度假了?

How did you make this cake? 你是怎样制作这个蛋糕的?

## 演练巡航



### 一、单项选择。

- ( A ) 1. We don't go to school \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday and Sunday.  
A. on                      B. in  
C. at                        D. to

- ( C ) 2. —What did they do yesterday?  
—They went \_\_\_\_\_ in the park.  
A. boat                    B. a boat  
C. boating                D. boats

- ( C ) 3. Though her son \_\_\_\_\_ five years ago, she kept on finding him.  
A. lost                      B. is lost  
C. was lost                D. lose

- ( D ) 4. The movie was \_\_\_\_\_ but \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. interested; scared  
B. interested; scary  
C. interesting; scared  
D. interesting; scary

- ( B ) 5. There is something wrong with her ears, so he \_\_\_\_\_ her.  
A. shouted at    B. shouted to  
C. shout at        D. shout to

### 二、根据汉语意思完成句子。

1. 银行里如此拥挤, 以至于我没有看见你。  
It was so crowded in the bank that I didn't see you.
2. 我们正在学习一门第二外语。  
We are studying a second language.
3. 你跟谁一起打的网球?  
Who did you play tennis with?
4. 保持身体健康很重要。  
It's important to keep healthy.
5. 他们上周去野营了吗?  
Did they go camping last week?

### 三、根据要求完成句子。

1. They went to the supermarket yesterday afternoon. (改为否定句)  
They didn't go to the supermarket yesterday afternoon.
2. Does your father read newspaper every morning? (用 yesterday morning 改写句子)  
Did your father read newspaper yesterday morning?
3. Tom went shopping with his cousin. (对画线部分提问)  
Who did Tom go shopping with?
4. He played the piano last Saturday. (对画线部

分提问)

When did he play the piano?

5. I stayed up late to watch the soccer game. (对

画线部分提问)

Why did you stay up late?

### Period 3

### Section B (1a-1e)

#### 预习起航



一、翻译下列短语。

- 弹吉他 play the guitar
- 去图书馆 go to the library
- 放风筝 fly a kite
- 和朋友共进晚餐 have dinner with friends
- swimming pool 游泳池
- not really 不完全是;算不上

二、翻译下列句子。

- Who went to the library?  
—Sally did.  
——谁去了图书馆?  
——赛丽去了。
- Did you do anything interesting last weekend?  
—Not really, but I visited my sister.  
——上个周末你做了什么有趣的事情吗?  
——算不上,但我去拜访了我的姐姐。

#### 名师导航



##### 1. fly a kite

fly a kite 意为“放风筝”, fly 用作及物动词时,意为“使飞翔;驾驶(飞机)”。

Flying kites on windy days is an interesting activity. 在刮风的天气放风筝是一项有趣的活

Parker is learning how to fly an airplane. 帕克正在学习驾驶飞机。

fly 用作不及物动词时,意为“飞;飞行”。

The birds are flying in the sky. 鸟儿正在天空飞翔。

【拓展】fly 还可以作名词,意为“苍蝇”。

There is a fly in my room. Can you catch

it? 我的房间有一只苍蝇。你能抓住它吗?

##### 2. anything interesting

修饰 anything, something, nothing, everything 的形容词应置于其后。

Did you hear anything interesting there? 你在那儿听到什么有趣的事了吗?

Has anything unusual happened? 有什么不寻常的事发生吗?

#### 演练巡航



一、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

- There were so many mice (mouse) and butterflies (butterfly) in that old room.
- Li Mei left (leave) home two years ago and now she is (be) a bank clerk.
- I started (start) to play (play) basketball five years ago.
- It is important for us to learn (learn) math well.
- That is a very useful (use) lesson.

二、根据句意及首字母的提示补全单词。

- This pair of shoes is too expensive. I want a cheap one.
- These visitors put up a tent and made a fire.
- How was your vacation?  
—It was great.
- I like sea foods. They're delicious.
- They went to the beach. They swam in the sea.

三、单项选择。

- ( D ) 1. How do you study \_\_\_\_\_ your test?  
A. at                      B. with  
C. in                        D. for
- ( D ) 2. Bob was very angry with his sister, so

- he \_\_\_\_\_ her.
- A. shouted      B. shouted to  
C. shouted with      D. shouted at
- ( A ) 3. The mouse \_\_\_\_\_ when I came in.  
A. ran away      B. is running  
C. run away      D. runs away
- ( C ) 4. There \_\_\_\_\_ some interesting news in yesterday's newspaper.  
A. is      B. are  
C. was      D. were
- ( B ) 5. Mary's mother watches her \_\_\_\_\_ the piano every afternoon.  
A. to play      B. play  
C. played      D. plays
- ( C ) 6. Everyone in our class \_\_\_\_\_ their holidays.  
A. enjoy      B. enjoying  
C. enjoys      D. enjoyed
- ( C ) 7. \_\_\_\_\_ a cold morning, I played soccer

- on my computer.
- A. In      B. At  
C. On      D. Of
- ( D ) 8. —Who cleaned the room?  
—Mike \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. cleans      B. does  
C. cleaned      D. did
- ( D ) 9. We can't \_\_\_\_\_ others, but we must \_\_\_\_\_ the old to make them hear us.  
A. shout to; shout at  
B. shout at; shout at  
C. shout to; shout to  
D. shout at; shout to
- ( C ) 10. My father bought a scarf \_\_\_\_\_ my mother \_\_\_\_\_ a birthday gift.  
A. to; as      B. for; like  
C. for; as      D. to; like

## Period 4 Section B (2a—2c)

### 预习起航



记录你妈妈上周末的活动并写出你的感受。

Time	Activities
On Saturday morning	
On Saturday afternoon	
On Sunday morning	
On Sunday afternoon	
Your feelings:	

### 名师导航



#### 1. so... that...

so + 形容词或副词 + that... 引导结果状语从句, 意为“如此……以至于……”。

That box is so heavy that I can't carry it. 这个箱子太重了, 我搬不动它。

That girl got up so early that she caught the first bus in the morning. 那个女孩起得如

此早, 所以赶上了早上第一趟公交车。

【拓展】so... that... 有时可转换为 too... to... 的结构, 意为“太……而不能……”。

The boy is so young that he can't look after himself. = The boy is too young to look after himself. 这个男孩太小了, 无法照顾自己。

#### 2. take a long bus ride 坐了很长一段时间的公共汽车

此处的 ride 是名词, 意为“乘车”。ride 还可以作动词, 意为“骑”。

I like riding a horse. 我喜欢骑马。

#### 3. wake up

wake up 是动词短语, 意为“醒来”。

My mother always wakes up at 6:00 in the morning. 我妈妈总是早上 6 点醒来。

【拓展】wake sb. up 意为“把某人叫醒”。

A loud sound woke me up in the midnight yesterday. 昨天半夜一声巨响把我吵醒了。

#### 4. see... doing...

see... doing... 意为“看见……正在做……”。

I saw a boy dancing on the playground



just now. 我刚才看见一个男孩正在操场上跳舞。

【拓展】类似用法的单词还有 hear, feel, watch 等。

I heard a girl playing the piano in the next room. 我听见隔壁有个女孩在弹钢琴。

I felt an insect climbing on my back. 我感觉有只虫子在我的背上爬。

【辨析】see... doing... 与 see... do...

see... doing... 强调的是“看见……此时此刻正在做……”，而 see... do... 意为“看到……做……了”，强调全过程。

I saw her coming. 我看见她走过来。

I saw her come. 我看到她来了。



### 一、单项选择。

- ( C ) 1. He with his uncle \_\_\_\_\_ away from the city two years ago.  
A. is                      B. are  
C. was                    D. were
- ( D ) 2. Mary visited her grandparents \_\_\_\_\_ last Sunday.  
A. on                      B. in  
C. for                      D. 不填

( A ) 3. \_\_\_\_\_ there anything new in today's newspaper?

- A. Is                      B. Are  
C. Was                    D. Were

( B ) 4. I was so tired \_\_\_\_\_ I couldn't get up early.

- A. so                      B. that  
C. and                    D. this

( C ) 5. My dad told me that snakes \_\_\_\_\_ have ears \_\_\_\_\_ feel things.

- A. didn't; but could  
B. didn't; and could  
C. don't; but can  
D. don't; and can

### 二、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. Jim closed the window to keep (keep) the wind out.
2. Mr. King stayed (stay) at home and did nothing.
3. Where did you go camping (camp) last weekend?
4. I was very surprised (surprise) to hear the news.
5. There are many sheep (sheep) on the farm.

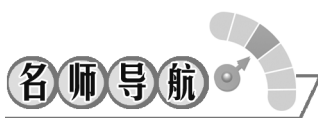
## Period 5

## Section B (3a—Self Check)



回忆一次难忘的经历,完成下面的表格。

A day to remember	
Event	
Time	
Place	
What happened	
Feelings	



### 1. put up

put up 是动词短语,意为“搭起;举起”,后面接宾语。

They put up the tents and went to fetch water. 他们搭起帐篷,然后去取了水。

He puts up his hand to answer the teacher's question. 他举起手来回答老师的问题。



## 2. up and down

up and down 是副词短语,意为“上上下下;上下来回”。

She looked me up and down. 她上上下下打量了我一番。

## 3. 本单元写作指导

本单元的写作话题是周末生活,谈论周末发生的事情及自己的感受。此类作文以记叙文为主,写作时要注意合理使用一般过去时。

常用的表达句型:

I was busy...

It's a really interesting weekend.

On Saturday afternoon, I...

In the evening, I...



### 一、单项选择。

- ( D ) 1. I don't know how \_\_\_\_\_ English well.  
A. study                      B. studied  
C. studying                  D. to study
- ( B ) 2. She often \_\_\_\_\_ to study for the test.  
A. puts up                    B. stays up  
C. cuts up                    D. gives up
- ( B ) 3. \_\_\_\_\_ surprising news!  
A. How                        B. What  
C. What a                    D. How a
- ( C ) 4. They felt the car \_\_\_\_\_ fast.  
A. moves                     B. move  
C. moving                    D. to move
- ( B ) 5. She always helps her best friend \_\_\_\_\_ her math.  
A. studies                    B. study  
C. studying                  D. studied

### 二、根据要求完成句子。

1. He did his homework at home after class. (改为否定句)

He didn't do his homework at home after class.

2. There were some CDs and hair clips on the desk. (改为一般疑问句)

Were there any CDs and hair clips on

the desk?

3. This coat is fifty yuan. (对画线部分提问)

How much is this coat?

4. His favorite subject is English. (改为同义句)

He likes English best.

5. It's time for breakfast. (改为同义句)

It's time to have breakfast.

### 三、阅读理解。

Last Sunday it was rainy. Gina stayed at home. Her friend, Celina came to visit her. She came back from London. She told Gina something about her vacation. "It was pretty good," she said. Celina visited the British Museum and Hyde Park. She took a lot of photos. It was lunch time. Gina's parents were not at home. They decided to cook by themselves. Gina cooked some potatoes with peppers, some beef and a bowl of soup. After Celina ate up the potatoes, she said slowly, "I think they are delicious!" But Gina thought they are awful. She said, "Celina, thank you. But I put too much peppers."

- ( C ) 1. What was the weather like last Sunday?  
A. Sunny.                    B. Snowy.  
C. Rainy.                    D. Windy.
- ( B ) 2. Where did Celina go on a vacation?  
A. Sichuan.                  B. London.  
C. Shanghai.                D. Beijing.
- ( D ) 3. \_\_\_\_\_ cooked lunch.  
A. Celina  
B. Gina's mother  
C. Celina's mother  
D. Gina
- ( B ) 4. What did Celina think of the potatoes?  
A. Very sweet.              B. Delicious.  
C. Too hot.                    D. Awful.

### 四、书面表达。

请根据以下信息写一篇 70 个词左右的短文,内容包括:

1. 我 10 岁生日那天,妈妈做了美味的食物;
2. 和妈妈去火车站接叔叔和婶婶;
3. 叔叔和婶婶送给我一台新电脑作为生日礼物;

4. 晚上,所有的朋友都来我们家参加生日聚会,为我买了生日礼物。我们聚餐,一起唱歌跳舞,非常开心。

*A birthday to remember*

I still remember my tenth birthday. In the early morning, I saw my mother cooking my favorite food. It was really delicious. Then we went to the train station to meet my uncle and aunt. They said "Happy Birthday!" to me and

gave me a new computer as my gift. I liked this gift very much. In the evening, my friends all went to my house to take part in my birthday party. We ate and drank, sang and danced. And each of them brought me a present. We had a great time together.

---

---

---



- ( D )31. A. love                      B. want                      C. think                      D. draw  
 ( B )32. A. He                            B. She                            C. It                            D. Her  
 ( A )33. A. soccer                      B. basketball                      C. music                      D. volleyball  
 ( C )34. A. And                            B. So                            C. But                            D. Or  
 ( D )35. A. sings                      B. plays                      C. joins                      D. helps

B)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后用方框中所给单词的适当形式填空,每个词限用一次。(每小题 1.5 分)

club teach at like class make swim or can fun

What can you do? Can you play basketball 36. or volleyball? Are you good at 37. swimming? If you 38. like to play sports, if you like to 39. make friends with children, please come to our 40. club. We need some students to 41. teach children to play basketball, volleyball and swim. We have 42. classes from 6:30 a. m. to 9:00 a. m. on Saturdays and Sundays. You 43. can get \$ 25 for each class. It's easy and 44. fun. Call Mr. White 45. at 367-4566.

四、阅读理解。(25 分)

A)阅读下面短文,根据短文内容从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出最佳选项。(每小题 2 分)

What do you do to relax? Do you watch TV or play computer? Come and join us. In our club, you can learn the piano, the drums, the guitar, the violin. They are all for just \$ 15 each class. The classes are from 3 p. m. to 5 p. m. on Sundays. And you can also learn to sing and dance for \$ 10 each class. The classes are from 7 p. m. to 8:30 p. m. on Mondays, Wednesdays. You'll be happy in our club.

- ( A )46. What can't you learn in the club?  
 A. To play computer.    B. The guitar.                      C. The drums.                      D. To sing.  
 ( B )47. How much is for learning the violin?  
 A. \$ 10 each class.                      B. \$ 15 each class.  
 C. \$ 20 each class.                      D. \$ 25 each class.  
 ( D )48. Linda is only free on Sunday, she can learn to \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. watch TV                      B. sing                      C. dance                      D. play the piano  
 ( D )49. If you want to learn to sing, you should pay(付)\_\_\_\_\_ for each class.  
 A. \$ 25                      B. \$ 15                      C. \$ 20                      D. \$ 10  
 ( B )50. The violin classes are on \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. Mondays                      B. weekends                      C. Wednesdays                      D. Fridays

B)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后从下面方框的七个选项中选择五个还原到文章中,使短文意思通顺、结构完整。(每小题 3 分)

51. E my parents, my brother, my sister and me. My father likes reading stories. 52. B My mother likes cooking. She can cook delicious food. My brother's name is John. He is 15. He can play soccer. But he can't play basketball. 53. F She likes to play the piano. She can play the piano very well. 54. C I'm 12. I am good at swimming. 55. G

- A. There are four people in my family;  
 B. And he can write stories, too.  
 C. She wants to be a musician.  
 D. John is 8, too.  
 E. There are five people in my family;  
 F. My sister Lisa is 8.  
 G. I often teach my brother and sister to swim.

五、补全对话。(每小题 2 分,共 10 分)

- A: Hi, Leo.  
 B: Hi, Andy.  
 A: 56. Can you do kung fu \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: No, I can't do kung fu. But I can play basketball.  
 A: 57. What can your friend Peter do \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: My friend Peter can draw.  
 A: 58. Can he play the piano or the drums \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: No, he can't. But Amy can play the piano, Jack can play the drums.  
 A: 59. What can your sister do \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: My sister can dance. Can you play the guitar?  
 A: 60. Yes, I can. And I can play well.

六、书面表达。(15 分)

你会做什么,不会做什么?你的朋友或家人都会或者不会做什么?请先完成下面的表格,然后根据表格内容描述你和你的朋友、家人会或不会做什么。

要求:不少于 50 个词。

Names	Can	Can't
Emily	sing	draw
Mary	play the piano	play soccer
Lucia	dance	play the violin
Bob	play soccer	speak Chinese

I am Emily. I like to sing. I can sing well, but I can't draw. I have three friends. They are Mary, Lucia and Bob. Mary can play the piano, but she can't play soccer. Lucia can dance. She is good at dancing. But she can't play the violin. Bob is a boy, so he likes to play soccer and he can play soccer very well. But he can't speak Chinese.

## Unit 2 检测卷

### 一、听力测试。(每小题 1 分,共 15 分)

A) 请听下面三段对话。每段对话后有一小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听完每段对话后,你都将有 10 秒钟的时间回答有关小题和阅读下一小题。每段对话读两遍。

- ( C ) 1. What time does Amy take a walk?  
 A. At seven o'clock.                      B. At seven fifty.                      C. At seven fifteen.
- ( A ) 2. When does the boy do homework?  
 A. At 7:50.                                      B. At 7:30.                                      C. At 7:13.
- ( B ) 3. When does the boy do exercise?  
 A. At half past seven.                      B. At half past six.                      C. At a quarter past six.

B) 请听下面一段对话和一段独白。每段对话或独白后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听每段对话或独白前,你都将有 30 秒钟的时间阅读各小题。每段对话或独白读两遍。

请听下面一段对话,回答第 4 至第 6 小题。

- ( C ) 4. Who gets up first?  
 A. Jane.    B. David's mother.                      C. Jane's mother.
- ( B ) 5. What time does Jane go to school?  
 A. At about 6:50.                                      B. At about 7:20.                                      C. At about 7:30.
- ( B ) 6. When do Jane's parents get home?  
 A. At 5:50.    B. At 6 o'clock.                                      C. At 6:50.

请听下面一段独白,回答第 7 至第 10 小题。

- ( A ) 7. How many people are there in Peter's family?  
 A. 7.    B. 6.    C. 5.
- ( B ) 8. Peter's family have a shower schedule because \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. they all like to take a shower  
 B. they only have one shower  
 C. they don't have any shower
- ( B ) 9. When does Peter's grandpa take a shower?  
 A. At 5:45.    B. At 6:10.    C. At 6:35.
- ( C ) 10. Who takes a shower at 7:55?  
 A. Peter.    B. Peter's father.    C. Peter's uncle.

C) 请听下面一段独白,根据独白内容完成下列句子,每个空格不超过三个单词。听独白前,你将有 50 秒钟的时间阅读句子内容。独白读两遍。

11. My father works in a TV station .  
 12. He goes to work at half past six/ 6:30 .  
 13. He has lots of work to do.

14. He gets home at 9 o'clock at night .

15. He never thinks it's boring.

### 二、单项选择。(每小题 1 分,共 10 分)

请阅读下面各小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- ( D ) 16. —What time do you get dressed?  
 — \_\_\_\_\_ 7:35.  
 A. On    B. From    C. In    D. At
- ( B ) 17. I don't like to play basketball, so I \_\_\_\_\_ go to play.  
 A. usually    B. never    C. always    D. often
- ( C ) 18. —You look happy today.  
 —Yes, I get a \_\_\_\_\_ in a school.  
 A. teacher    B. work    C. job    D. fruit
- ( D ) 19. Eric is my \_\_\_\_\_ friend. We always exercise, play games and do homework together.  
 A. funny    B. interesting    C. boring    D. best
- ( D ) 20. It's a good habit to get up early and \_\_\_\_\_ early, and we can be healthy.  
 A. go home    B. go to work    C. go to school    D. go to bed
- ( A ) 21. —Are you sad, Bob?  
 —Yes, I have \_\_\_\_\_ homework to do every day.  
 A. lots of    B. many    C. lot of    D. a little
- ( B ) 22. Jeff likes to eat bread and milk \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast.  
 A. to    B. for    C. at    D. and
- ( B ) 23. I like meat, it tastes \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. badly    B. delicious    C. well    D. sweet
- ( A ) 24. —What do you often do after dinner?  
 —I usually \_\_\_\_\_ a walk.  
 A. take    B. get    C. go    D. play
- ( A ) 25. Eating vegetables and fruit \_\_\_\_\_ our health.  
 A. is good for    B. is good at    C. are good for    D. are good at

### 三、完形填空。(25 分)

A) 先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后从各小题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入相应空白处的最佳选项。(每小题 1 分)

I am Eric. I'm a student. I have four classes 26 and two classes in the afternoon. After 27 I go home. At 5:20 I 28 home. I always either do exercises 29 play games with my friends. Sometimes I 30 parents cook dinner. After 31, I do homework with my sister. My 32 is not good, my 33 always helps me with my English. I 34 at 9:00 p. m. I'm tired, but I'm 35 every day.

- ( B ) 26. A. in the afternoon                      B. in the morning                      C. at night                      D. at noon  
 ( A ) 27. A. school    B. running    C. exercises                      D. lunch  
 ( B ) 28. A. have    B. get    C. want    D. help



- ( C )29. A. and                      B. with                      C. or                      D. but  
 ( D )30. A. do                      B. see                      C. think                      D. help  
 ( A )31. A. dinner                      B. class                      C. games                      D. breakfast  
 ( B )32. A. math                      B. English                      C. Chinese                      D. history  
 ( D )33. A. brother                      B. cousin                      C. friend                      D. sister  
 ( D )34. A. do homework                      B. eat ice-cream                      C. eat lunch                      D. go to bed  
 ( A )35. A. happy                      B. sad                      C. free                      D. cool

B)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后用方框中所给单词的适当形式填空,每个词限用一次。(每小题1.5分)

buy time late bed angry you open after clock at

Tom is always 36. late for school. One day, his mother 37. buys him an alarm clock(闹钟). She says to Tom, "You must get up when 38. you hear(听到) the alarm ring." "Yes, Mom," says Tom. 39. After that, Tom gets up 40. at 7:30 a. m. when he hears the alarm ring.

One day his mother forgets(忘记) to set the alarm on the 41. clock. Tom doesn't get up on time. It is 42. time for breakfast. His mother 43. opens Tom's door and finds him in 44. bed with his eyes open. "Why don't you get up?" The mother is 45. angry. "You tell me to get up when I hear the alarm ring. So I am waiting for(等待) the alarm."

#### 四、阅读理解。(25分)

A)阅读短文,根据短文内容从每题所给的A、B、C、D四个选项中选出最佳选项。(每小题2分)

My father Mike is a farmer. He lives with my mother in a big house in a village called Sun Village. My parents grow(种植) rice and vegetables. My father works very hard. Every morning he gets up very early. He walks to the farm at 6:30 a. m. His work starts(开始) at 7 o'clock. He comes back home for lunch and has a short rest. Then he goes back to work again. He often finishes his work at 6 p. m. He gets back home at half past six. After supper he watches TV or listens to the radio. He usually goes to bed before eleven o'clock.

- ( D )46. Where does Mike work?  
 A. In a hospital.                      B. In a school.                      C. In a factory.                      D. On a farm.  
 ( C )47. What does the word "rest" mean(意思) in Chinese?  
 A. 睡觉                      B. 聊天                      C. 休息                      D. 时间  
 ( A )48. What time does Mike get home in the afternoon?  
 A. At 6:30 p. m.                      B. At 6:40 p. m.                      C. After supper.                      D. At 10:00 p. m.  
 ( C )49. When does Mike go to bed?  
 A. At 11:00 p. m.                      B. After 11:00 p. m.                      C. Before 11:00 p. m.                      D. At 11:30 p. m.  
 ( B )50. Which of the following is RIGHT?  
 A. Mike is a teacher.                      B. Mike lives in a village.                      C. Mike gets up late.                      D. Mike goes to the farm at 6:00. a. m.

B)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后从下面方框中的七个选项中选择五个还原到文章中,使短文意

思通顺、结构完整。(每小题3分)

Hello, I'm Joe. I'm an English boy. I'm thirteen years old. There are five people in my family. 51. C I go to school from Monday to Friday. 52. A So I get up late and I have much time for breakfast with my family. We always eat bread, vegetables for breakfast. Vegetables are good for our health. 53. B

In the afternoon, I meet my friends. We play soccer together. 54. E

In the evening, I go to the violin club. I get home at a quarter past eight. 55. D I like reading and I can learn many things. I go to bed at 10:00 p. m. This is my day. What about your day? Can you tell us?

- A. I don't need to go to school on weekends.  
 B. After breakfast, I do homework for two hours.  
 C. They are my parents, sister, brother and me.  
 D. I read books before going to bed.  
 E. Sometimes we do some shopping.  
 F. I don't like to play with my friends.  
 G. I need to clean the room on Saturday.

#### 五、补全对话。(每小题2分,共10分)

A: Good morning, Frank.

B: Good morning, Ann.

A: 56. What's your sister's job / What does your sister do ?

B: My sister is a teacher.

A: A teacher? Oh, it's great. 57. Is she busy ?

B: Yes, she is busy every day.

A: 58. When does she go to work ?

B: She goes to work at 7:10.

A: 59. Does she have/eat lunch at home ?

B: No, she eats lunch at school.

A: 60. When does she exercise ?

B: She is busy from Monday to Friday, so she always exercises on weekends.

#### 六、书面表达。(15分)

你是否拥有健康的生活方式呢?请以 *My Daily Life* 为题描述你每天的生活。不少于60个词。

#### *My Daily Life*

I am busy from Monday to Friday because I have to go to school. I usually get up at 6:30 a. m. in the morning. And then I do some washing. After that, I will have my breakfast at 6:50. I usually go to school at 7:15. I usually go to school and come home by bike. I have four classes in the morning and three in the afternoon. I have lunch at home. I study Chinese, math, English and some other subjects at school. At night, I watch TV or sometimes play computer. But I have to finish my homework first. I usually go to bed at 10:00 p. m.

## Unit 3 检测卷

### 一、听力测试。(每小题 1 分,共 15 分)

A)请听下面三段对话。每段对话后有一小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听完每段对话后,你都将有 10 秒钟的时间回答有关小题和阅读下一小题。每段对话读两遍。

- ( C )1. How will the speakers go to the sports club this afternoon?  
A. By car. B. By bike. C. By bus.
- ( A )2. How long does it take Bill to get to school by bus?  
A. About 15 minutes. B. About 20 minutes. C. About 25 minutes.

- ( B )3. How far is the library from the bus stop?  
A. 0.5 kilometer. B. 1 kilometer. C. 1.5 kilometers.

B)请听下面一段对话和一段独白。每段对话或独白后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听每段对话或独白前,你都将有 30 秒钟的时间阅读各小题。每段对话或独白读两遍。

请听下面一段对话,回答第 4 至第 6 小题。

- ( B )4. How does Cindy usually get to school?  
A. On foot. B. By bus. C. By car.
- ( A )5. How far is it from Cindy's home to her school?  
A. About 15 kilometers. B. About 16 kilometers. C. About 17 kilometers.
- ( B )6. How long does it take Cindy to get to school?  
A. About 20 minutes. B. About 30 minutes. C. About 40 minutes.

请听下面一段独白,回答第 7 至第 10 小题。

- ( C )7. What day is it today?  
A. Friday. B. Saturday. C. Sunday.
- ( A )8. What subject does Ms. Green teach?  
A. English. B. Art. C. Music.
- ( B )9. How far is Ms. Green's home from the school?  
A. About 6 kilometers. B. About 7 kilometers. C. About 8 kilometers.
- ( A )10. How do they go to Ms. Green's home?  
A. By bus. B. By car. C. By bike.

C)请听下面一段独白,根据独白内容完成下列句子,每个空格不超过三个单词。听独白前,你将有 50 秒钟的时间阅读句子内容。独白读两遍。

11. Lin Tao is 32 years old.
12. Lin Tao works in a clothes store.
13. Lin Tao's work place is about 20 kilometers from his home.
14. Lin Tao usually goes to work by car.
15. It takes Lin Tao 10 minutes to walk to the bus stop today.

### 二、单项选择。(每小题 1 分,共 10 分)

请阅读下面各小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- ( C )16. I usually go to school on \_\_\_\_\_ bike. But today I went to school by \_\_\_\_\_ bus because of the rain.  
A. 不填;不填 B. my; the C. my;不填 D. 不填; the
- ( B )17. They decide to walk to the library, \_\_\_\_\_ it's not far from here.  
A. so B. because C. but D. although
- ( D )18. Mr. Zhang lives near a \_\_\_\_\_. He often goes swimming there in the summer.

- A. stop B. town C. mountain D. river
- ( A )19. There are over nineteen \_\_\_\_\_ students in Sonia's school.  
A. hundred B. hundreds C. hundred of D. hundreds of
- ( C )20. My grandpa is \_\_\_\_\_. I have to look after him in the hospital.  
A. active B. healthy C. ill D. angry
- ( B )21. —Look, Steve! You are so dirty. Go to \_\_\_\_\_ quickly.  
—OK, Mom.  
A. sleep B. shower C. send D. eat
- ( C )22. —\_\_\_\_\_ does your mother usually go to the museum, Tony?  
—She takes the subway.  
A. Where B. What C. How D. Why
- ( B )23. —Where are you going, Simon?  
—Oh, I'm \_\_\_\_\_ the railway station. My cousin is coming and I'll meet him there.  
A. waiting for B. leaving for C. looking at D. talking about
- ( C )24. —\_\_\_\_\_ does it take you to get to the post office?  
—About twenty minutes.  
A. How often B. How far C. How long D. How soon
- ( C )25. —Can you tell me \_\_\_\_\_?  
—By boat.  
A. how do you go to work B. where do you work  
C. how you go to work D. where you work

### 三、完形填空。(25 分)

A)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后从各小题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入相应空白处的最佳选项。(每小题 1 分)

Simon is one of my friends. He often rides his motorbike very fast and he likes to 26 people how fast he can ride.

One day, a thief rode a motorbike to his house, went in, took 27 of his things, and ran out of his house quickly. Simon saw him and rode 28 him, and shouted, "Hey! Don't you know you 29 ride faster than me?"

The thief 30 nothing, but he rode much faster. Simon got 31 and rode even faster, too. He was soon a few kilometers away from his 32. He was riding hard when he saw me. "Why are you riding so fast?" I asked. "I 33 to catch a thief," said Simon. "But 34 is the thief?" I asked. "Kilometers and kilometers behind," Simon said proudly (自豪地). "He 35 he could ride faster than me, but you see he was wrong."

- ( B )26. A. talk B. show C. meet D. ask
- ( D )27. A. none B. any C. all D. some
- ( A )28. A. after B. before C. round D. down
- ( C )29. A. shouldn't B. should C. can't D. can
- ( B )30. A. heard B. said C. got D. took
- ( C )31. A. sad B. tired C. angry D. happy
- ( A )32. A. house B. school C. office D. store
- ( D )33. A. believe B. stop C. forget D. want
- ( B )34. A. how B. where C. why D. what
- ( A )35. A. thought B. knew C. found D. agreed

B)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后用方框中所给单词的适当形式填空,每个词限用一次。(每小题 1.5 分)

nice walk bad class so thirty then friend too out



Miss Smith is a teacher. She has 36. thirty students. Their ages are from seven to eight. She is a good teacher and all her students like her. They think she is their 37. friend.

Miss Smith's home is not far from the school, 38. so she goes to school on foot every morning. Today, it's cold and windy. When Miss Smith 39. walks to school, the wind goes into her eyes. Big tears(眼泪) begin running 40. out. About fifteen minutes later, Miss Smith gets to school. The 41. class will begin soon. She opens the door of the classroom and goes into the classroom. It is 42. nice and warm there. Miss Smith is happy to see her students. The students are happy to see her, 43. too.

Little Sam, one of Miss Smith's students, looks at her carefully. 44. Then he walks up to Miss Smith, gives her a big hug(拥抱) and says, "Don't cry(哭), Miss Smith. School isn't so 45. bad."

四、阅读理解。(25分)

A) 阅读短文, 根据短文内容从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出最佳选项。(每小题 2 分)

It is very important for children to get to school safely and on time(准时) every day. Luckily for them, there is a new program called *Free Home to School Transport*. It gives children free rides to school. But to enjoy the free trip, children have to qualify(具备资格). It usually depends on where the children live, which school they are going to and how old they are.

Children can take free home to school transport if they:

- are between 5 and 16 years old.
- are going to the nearest school.
- live further away from the school than the statutory (法定的) walking distances (2 miles for students under 8, and 3 miles for those aged above 8).

No matter (无论) how far away children live from school, they can take the free transport if they have walking problems or there is no safe road for them. A safe road usually has crossings, lights and should be clean.

Also, there are still free home to school travel policies for children in poor families and children with special educational needs. You can find out more on the Internet and see if your children are qualified.

- ( A ) 46. According to the passage, it is very important for children not to be \_\_\_\_\_ for school every day.  
A. late                      B. away                      C. early                      D. ill
- ( C ) 47. To enjoy the program, a child should go to a school that is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. famous                      B. best                      C. nearest                      D. free
- ( D ) 48. A 9-year-old boy who lives \_\_\_\_\_ miles away from school qualifies for the program.  
A. 1.5                      B. 2                      C. 2.5                      D. 4
- ( B ) 49. The underlined word "policies" means " \_\_\_\_\_ " in Chinese.  
A. 名额                      B. 政策                      C. 方法                      D. 目标
- ( B ) 50. Which of the following is TRUE?  
A. Seventeen-year-old students can take free rides to school.  
B. If Tom has some problems with his leg, he can enjoy the program.  
C. Poor children can not have free transport to school.  
D. A safe road should be near the school and have lights.

B) 先阅读短文, 掌握其大意, 然后从下面方框的七个选项中选择五个还原到文章中, 使短文意思通顺、结构完整。(每小题 3 分)

I'm Frank. When I visit London, I like to talk with people there in English. 51. D His name is Bill. When I am saying how I study English, he is surprised and says, "You don't say!" 52. C So I say to him, "Would you like to talk about China?"

53. "G" Bill says. "It has a lot of interesting places. People from many countries go to visit them every year. I always want to travel around China by car." I am happy that he likes my country.

54. E At this time, he says, "You don't say!"  
I am surprised and ask him, "Why do you ask me not to talk about it?"

55. "A"  
"But you say 'You don't say'."

Hearing this, Bill laughs. He says, "'You don't say' means 'Really'."

- A. Well, I don't do that.
- B. I don't know what to say.
- C. I think maybe this is not a good thing to talk about.
- D. Today I meet an Englishman in the street and talk with him.
- E. Then I tell him something about China.
- F. I live a happy life in London.
- G. Oh, China is a great country.

五、补全对话。(每小题 2 分, 共 10 分)

(M=Mary B=Bob)

B: Summer vacation is coming. I am going to my grandparents' home.

M: Great! 56. Where do they live \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B: They live in the countryside. Very far from my home.

M: 57. How far is it \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B: It's about 500 kilometers from here.

M: Wow! That's too far. 58. How do you get there \_\_\_\_\_ .

B: I usually take the train.

M: 59. How long does it take \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B: It takes about six hours. And then I take a bus from the train station to their home.

M: Wow. 60. That's a long trip \_\_\_\_\_ .

B: Yes, it's a really long trip.

六、书面表达。(15分)

假如你是李娟, 请你根据下表写一篇英语短文, 在下周一英语课上介绍你的四位好朋友的上学方式。70 个词左右, 可适当发挥。

姓名	方式
王勇	步行
杰夫(Jeff)	骑自行车
劳拉(Laura)	乘地铁
张娜	坐校车

I'm Li Juan. I have four good friends. They go to school in different ways. Wang Yong usually goes to school on foot, because his home is just one kilometer from school. Jeff rides his bike to school. It takes him half an hour to get to school. He thinks it's good exercise. Laura lives far from school, so she takes the subway to school. Zhang Na takes the school bus to school. She likes the bus ride because she can talk to her classmates.

## Unit 4 检测卷

### 一、听力测试。(每小题 1 分,共 15 分)

A)请听下面三段对话。每段对话后有一小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听完每段对话后,你都将有 10 秒钟的时间回答有关小题和阅读下一小题。每段对话读两遍。

- ( A )1. When does the boy usually go to bed?  
 A. Before 10:30 p. m.      B. At 11:00 p. m.      C. At about 11:30 p. m.
- ( B )2. What does Tom always do in the classroom?  
 A. He listens to music.      B. He eats something.      C. He runs around.
- ( C )3. What does the boy usually do from Monday to Friday?  
 A. He does his homework and listens to music.  
 B. He listens to music and cleans his room.  
 C. He does his homework and takes a walk.

B)请听下面一段对话和一段独白。每段对话或独白后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听每段对话或独白前,你都将有 30 秒钟的时间阅读各小题。每段对话或独白读两遍。

请听下面一段对话,回答第 4 至第 6 小题。

- ( A )4. We can't listen to music \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. in the classroom      B. in the dining hall      C. in the hallways
- ( C )5. What makes the teacher unhappy?  
 A. We eat in the classroom.      B. We listen to music in class.      C. We fight with others.
- ( B )6. They are talking about \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. family rules      B. school rules      C. their class

请听下面一段独白,回答第 7 至第 10 小题。

- ( A )7. Cindy comes from \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. USA      B. Singapore      C. France
- ( B )8. Cindy eats \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. in the restaurant      B. in the dining hall      C. at home
- ( C )9. Cindy wears \_\_\_\_\_ at school.  
 A. sports shoes      B. glasses      C. a uniform
- ( A )10. Cindy \_\_\_\_\_ after she reads books.  
 A. goes to bed      B. watches TV      C. eats some food

C)请听下面一段独白,根据独白内容完成下列句子,每个空格不超过三个单词。听独白前,你将有 50 秒钟的时间阅读句子内容。独白读两遍。

11. We must get to school before 8:00 .
12. We can listen to music in the music room .
13. We must be quiet in the library .
14. We have to eat in the dining hall .
15. We have to wear the school uniform on school days.

### 二、单项选择。(每小题 1 分,共 10 分)

请阅读下面各小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- ( B )16. I often go to bed late because I have \_\_\_\_\_ homework to do every day.  
 A. too many      B. too much      C. many too      D. much too
- ( C )17. Look at the school rule. It \_\_\_\_\_, "Don't listen to music in class."  
 A. writes      B. writing      C. says      D. is
- ( A )18. The teacher is very strict \_\_\_\_\_ his students.  
 A. with      B. in      C. for      D. to
- ( B )19. Dave, you have to wear \_\_\_\_\_ shoes for P. E.  
 A. sport      B. sports      C. a sport      D. sporting
- ( B )20. Don't listen to music in the classroom \_\_\_\_\_ the hallways.  
 A. and      B. or      C. yet      D. but
- ( A )21. Sorry, you \_\_\_\_\_ play basketball in the classroom.  
 A. can't      B. don't      C. don't have to      D. won't
- ( D )22. Don't eat in class \_\_\_\_\_ don't leave your seats in class.  
 A. or      B. so      C. but      D. and
- ( D )23. He does his homework before going to bed \_\_\_\_\_ school nights.  
 A. for      B. in      C. at      D. on
- ( B )24. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ in the classroom.  
 A. noisy      B. be noisy      C. is noisy      D. be noise
- ( D )25. Daisy has to \_\_\_\_\_ the classroom after school.  
 A. cleans      B. cleaned      C. cleaning      D. clean

### 三、完形填空。(25 分)

A)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后从各小题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入相应空白处的最佳选项。(每小题 1 分)

Dear Dr. Know,

I have too many rules in my family. It isn't 26 . I have to get up at 6 o'clock 27 morning. I have to practice 28 English every day. I can't 29 my friends after school 30 I have to walk my dog. I can't watch TV in the 31 . And I have to be in bed 32 10 o'clock. On weekends, I have to 33 my bed and clean my room. Then I have to wash the 34 . I have to go to the Children's Palace to learn the violin. I never have any fun. What 35 I do?

Yours,  
Zhao Ming

- ( A )26. A. fun      B. happy      C. relaxing      D. bad
- ( C )27. A. late      B. early      C. every      D. today
- ( B )28. A. saying      B. speaking      C. talking      D. hearing
- ( C )29. A. watch      B. find      C. visit      D. have
- ( D )30. A. but      B. and      C. so      D. because
- ( B )31. A. class      B. evening      C. morning      D. school
- ( A )32. A. before      B. in      C. after      D. on
- ( D )33. A. look      B. made      C. have      D. make

- ( C )34. A. faces                      B. hand                      C. clothes                      D. foot  
 ( B )35. A. will                      B. can                      C. do                      D. am

B)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后用方框中所给单词的适当形式填空,每个词限用一次。(每小题1.5分)

they much strict eat day make on but for quiet

There are too 36. many rules in my class. For example, we can't arrive late 37. for class. We must be 38. on time. We can't eat in class. But we can 39. eat in the dining hall. We can't run in the hallways. We can't listen to music in class. 40. But we can listen to it in the music room. We can't fight. We have to wear the school uniform on school 41. days. We must be 42. quiet in the library. These rules are 43. strict. But I think the school 44. makes rules to help us. We must follow 45. them.

四、阅读理解。(25分)

A)请阅读短文,根据短文内容从每题所给的A、B、C、D四个选项中选出最佳选项。(每小题2分)

Hi, boys and girls! Welcome to our museum. It's free. You don't have to pay any money. But we have some rules for you. Please remember them and do as I say. Firstly, don't have food or drink here. You may make our museum dirty. Secondly, you can take photos here, but don't touch(触摸) the things here. Thirdly, keep quiet in the museum. Don't talk loudly. Fourthly, the museum is not open after five o'clock in the afternoon. Please leave(离开) before five. Have a good time here! Thank you.

- ( D )46. There are some rules for a \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. store                      B. park                      C. school                      D. museum  
 ( A )47. What's the Chinese meaning of the word "free" in the passage?  
 A. 免费的                      B. 迅速的                      C. 高兴的                      D. 自由的  
 ( B )48. Students can \_\_\_\_\_ in the museum.  
 A. have food and drink                      B. take photos  
 C. touch the things                      D. talk loudly  
 ( C )49. Students can stay in the museum \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. all day                      B. before 5:00 a. m.                      C. before 5:00 p. m.                      D. after 5:00 p. m.  
 ( D )50. We can learn from the article(文章) that \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. students don't want to pay any money  
 B. the museum has five rules for the students  
 C. the speaker who tells the students the rules is a teacher  
 D. the speaker hopes the students have a good time

B)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后从下面方框的七个选项中选择五个还原到文章中,使短文意思通顺、结构完整。(每小题3分)

Christina is an American girl. 51. D Every morning she gets up at 6:00. She has breakfast at home. 52. E She studies hard every day. She eats in the dining room when she is at school. 53. C Then she cleans the room and helps her mother with the dinner. Before she goes to bed, she usually reads some books. 54. B She thinks she is happy every day. 55. F

- A. Do you like it?  
 B. Then at 10:00 p. m. she goes to bed.  
 C. After school, she does her homework first.  
 D. She is a good student.  
 E. Then she wears her uniform and goes to school.  
 F. Do you think so?  
 G. She often helps her mother with housework.

五、补全对话。(每小题2分,共10分)

(A=Henry B=Alex)

- A: Good morning, Alex! 56. Nice to meet you !  
 B: Good morning, Henry! Nice to meet you, too.  
 A: Alex, I want to ask you something about school rules. 57. Can you help me ?  
 B: OK, please! I'd like to help you.  
 A: 58. Can I talk with my classmates in the class ?  
 B: Oh, you can't talk with your classmates in the class. But you can talk with them after class.  
 A: Oh, I know. 59. Can I eat in the classroom ?  
 B: No, not in the classroom. But you can eat in the dining hall.  
 A: That's all. 60. Thank you very much .  
 B: You're welcome.

六、书面表达。(15分)

无论在家里还是在学校里,刘刚总有许多制度要遵守,为此他很苦恼。于是,他写信给他的好朋友Jack,倾诉内心的不快。请你根据他要遵守的制度,帮他写信给Jack。不少于60个词。文章的开头和结尾已给出,但不计入总词数。

1. 6:30起床。2. 在校穿校服。3. 上课不准迟到。4. 上课时不能戴帽子。5. 在家不能看电视,每晚练钢琴。6. 9:00上床睡觉。7. 周末打扫房间,洗衣服。

Dear Jack,

I'm not happy every day. I have too many rules at school and in my house. I have to get up at 6:30 in the morning. I have to wear a school uniform at school. I can't arrive late for class. I can't wear a hat in class, either. At home I can't watch TV. I have to practice playing the piano every evening. I have to go to bed at 9:00. At the weekends, I have to clean my room and wash my clothes. I don't have any fun every day. What can I do?

Yours,  
 Liu Gang

## Unit 5 检测卷

### 一、听力测试。(每小题 1 分,共 15 分)

A)请听下面三段对话。每段对话后有一小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听完每段对话后,你都将有 10 秒钟的时间回答有关小题和阅读下一小题。每段对话读两遍。

- ( A )1. What animals does the boy like best?  
A. Koalas. B. Tigers. C. Fishes.
- ( B )2. What does the girl think of the lion?  
A. It's nice. B. It's ugly. C. It's cute.
- ( A )3. What are they talking about?  
A. Tigers. B. Elephants. C. Lions.

B)请听下面一段对话和一段独白。每段对话或独白后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听每段对话或独白前,你都将有 30 秒钟的时间阅读各小题。每段对话或独白读两遍。

请听下面一段对话,回答第 4 至第 6 小题。

- ( B )4. Where does the woman go on holidays?  
A. In China. B. In Italy. C. In America.
- ( A )5. What animals does the woman like best?  
A. Tigers. B. Pandas. C. Lions.
- ( C )6. How long will the woman stay there?  
A. About 2 weeks. B. About 4 weeks. C. About 3 weeks.

请听下面一段独白,回答第 7 至第 10 小题。

- ( C )7. Where is Mary from?  
A. China. B. Japan. C. America.
- ( C )8. Who takes Mary to the zoo?  
A. Her friends. B. Her teacher. C. Her parents.
- ( B )9. How many animals do they see?  
A. 3. B. 5. C. 4.
- ( A )10. What can we learn from the passage?  
A. They have a good time there.  
B. Mary gets up very late.  
C. There are pandas in their city.

C)请听下面一段独白,根据独白内容完成下列句子,每个空格不超过三个单词。听独白前,你将有 50 秒钟的时间阅读句子内容。独白读两遍。

11. Nancy is twelve years old.
12. She has many hobbies.
13. Her favorite animal is pandas.
14. She also likes watching TV.
15. She learns a lot from *Animal World*.

### 二、单项选择。(每小题 1 分,共 10 分)

请阅读下面各小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- ( A )16. — \_\_\_\_\_ do you go to the supermarket?  
— Because I want to buy some vegetables.  
A. Why B. What C. Where D. How
- ( B )17. — What do you think of the people there, Cindy?  
— People there are friendly \_\_\_\_\_ me.

- A. for B. to C. with D. and
- ( A )18. — Lions are very \_\_\_\_\_, but many children like them.  
— But I don't like them at all.  
A. scary B. friendly C. shy D. smart
- ( C )19. It's eight o'clock. The teacher is coming. Please \_\_\_\_\_ quiet.  
A. 不填 B. are C. be D. is
- ( B )20. — Do you like the movie?  
— Yes. I think it's \_\_\_\_\_ interesting. I want to see it.  
A. a kind of B. kind of C. kinds of D. of kind
- ( D )21. — What animals live only in China?  
— \_\_\_\_\_, of course.  
A. Lions B. Dolphins C. Tigers D. Pandas
- ( B )22. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ the toy bear anymore. It's time to go to school.  
A. play B. play with C. play at D. play for
- ( C )23. His brother likes to \_\_\_\_\_ cats, but I like to \_\_\_\_\_ soccer.  
A. play; play B. play; play with  
C. play with; play D. play with; play with
- ( C )24. — \_\_\_\_\_ does the girl \_\_\_\_\_?  
— Australia.  
A. Where; be from B. Why; come from  
C. Where; come from D. When; be from
- ( B )25. — I hear there are many animals in the zoo. Let's go to the zoo.  
— \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Not at all B. That sounds great  
C. All right D. Thank you very much

### 三、完形填空。(25 分)

A)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后从各小题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入相应空白处的最佳选项。(每小题 1 分)

There is a zoo near my home. I often go there to 26 the animals. There are many kinds of animals 27 it. They're tigers, elephants, giraffes, koalas and so on(等). 28 are very scary. I don't like 29. I like elephants because they're smart. They can help people 30 much work. Giraffes are beautiful. They eat leaves 31 the trees. They don't eat 32. Koalas are my favorite. They are very cute and interesting. They're from 33. They also eat leaves, 34 they don't eat meat. They sleep during the day and 35 up at night.

Do you like animals? Do you often go to the zoo? What animals do you like? Well, can you write and tell me about them?

- ( A )26. A. see B. like C. have D. look
- ( B )27. A. on B. in C. of D. at
- ( D )28. A. Zoos B. Animals C. Dogs D. Tigers
- ( C )29. A. his B. it C. them D. they
- ( A )30. A. do B. enjoy C. want D. find
- ( B )31. A. at B. on C. in D. with
- ( D )32. A. grass B. food C. vegetables D. meat
- ( D )33. A. Canada B. China C. America D. Australia
- ( B )34. A. so B. but C. because D. if
- ( C )35. A. go B. stand C. get D. take

B)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后用方框中所给单词的适当形式填空,每个词限用一次。(每小题 1.5 分)



want they in friendly usual rabbit toy should nothing dangerous





On holidays my parents often take me to the zoo in our city because I like animals. I have a lot of 36. toy animals in my room. In the zoo I can see tigers, elephants, monkeys, pandas, bears, giraffes and many other animals. Some animals are very 37. friendly, but some are not. Tigers, bears and lions are very 38. dangerous. That is why they have to stay in cages. But I don't think it's good for animals in cages. They 39. should be free. The animals in cages can't be happy.

Tigers 40. usually live in forests and mountains. They can run very fast. They catch and eat small animals like 41. rabbits and deer, but now they live in small rooms. They have 42. nothing to do every day. So they walk 43. in the cages, and they 44. want to get out. When they are tired, they sleep. I feel sorry for 45. them.

四、阅读理解。(25分)

A) 阅读短文, 根据短文内容从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出最佳选项。(每小题 2 分)

In our city, there is a zoo. There are a lot of animals in it.

 <p>Mona</p>	<p>Mona is an Australian koala. She is seven years old. She is very cute. She likes sleeping during the day. But at night she gets up and eats leaves. Mona doesn't drink water for months. But she is healthy, because she can get water from the leaves.</p>
 <p>Gerry</p>	<p>Here is a big house. A lion lives in it. Her name is Gerry. She is ugly. She is from South Africa. Meat is her favorite food. Gerry is very lazy. She sleeps and relaxes for 20 hours every day. Today is Gerry's eighth birthday. The workers in the zoo are having a birthday party for her.</p>
 <p>Johnny</p>	<p>This is a big elephant. His name is Johnny. He is from India. He's eleven years old. He has bad eyesight(视力). He likes to eat grass. He's friendly and clever. People can teach him to do something for them.</p>
 <p>Tuantuan</p>	<p>Tuantuan is a cute panda. She is five years old. She's from China. She is very beautiful, but she's very shy, so please be quiet. She likes eating bamboos and drinking water. She relaxes about 10 hours a day.</p>

- ( C ) 46. Gerry is \_\_\_\_\_ years old.  
A. 5                      B. 7                      C. 8                      D. 11
- ( A ) 47. \_\_\_\_\_ can't see things very well.  
A. The elephant      B. The lion              C. The koala            D. The panda
- ( D ) 48. \_\_\_\_\_ can help people to do things.  
A. Mona                B. Gerry                C. Tuantuan            D. Johnny
- ( C ) 49. These animals come from \_\_\_\_\_ countries.  
A. two                    B. three                C. four                    D. five
- ( A ) 50. Which of the following is TRUE?  
A. Mona can get water from the leaves, so she doesn't drink water for months.  
B. Gerry doesn't like to sleep or relax but she likes to eat meat.  
C. Johnny is very small. He only likes to eat meat.  
D. Tuantuan likes to eat bamboos but doesn't like to drink water.

B) 先阅读短文, 掌握其大意, 然后从下面方框的七个选项中选择五个还原到文章中, 使短文意思通顺、结构完整。(每小题 3 分)

Han Dan comes from China. She is a clever and beautiful girl. She studies in a middle school. 51. D They are from different countries and like different animals. Linda is from America. Her favorite animal is the penguin. 52. F Lily comes from Australia. The koala is her favorite animal. The koala likes to eat leaves. 53. E Bob is from India. His favorite animal is the elephant. 54. B Tom is a Canadian boy. He likes the tiger best. The tiger likes to eat meat. 55. A It is the panda. Bamboo is panda's favorite food.

- A. What is Han Dan's favorite animal?  
B. Grass is the elephant's favorite food.  
C. And it is very lazy, because it sleeps all day.  
D. She has four pen pals.  
E. And it sleeps during the day, but it gets up at night.  
F. The penguin likes ice very much.  
G. She likes making friends.

五、补全对话。(每小题 2 分, 共 10 分)

- Mary: Many new animals are in the zoo. 56. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
Betty: Oh? What are they?  
Mary: 57. Pandas, lions, monkeys, giraffes and elephants \_\_\_\_\_ .  
Betty: Let's go and see them.  
Mary: OK. 58. What do you want to see first \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
Betty: I want to see pandas first.  
Mary: 59. Why do you want to see them first \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
Betty: Because they are very cute. What do you like?  
Mary: I like elephants.  
Betty: Why do you like them?  
Mary: 60. Because they are big, but they are very friendly \_\_\_\_\_ .

六、书面表达。(15 分)

一批国外来的游客到动物园参观猴子和老虎。假如你是动物园的解说员, 请根据方框中的内容给游客们解说。

Animals	Monkey (Tom)	Tiger (Jenny)
Age	four	six
Characters(特征)	brown, smart, shy	two big eyes, strong, lazy and scary
Home	Jiangsu	Jilin
Hobbies	climb trees	sleep

- 要求: 1. 内容必须包括表格中所有信息, 不要逐句翻译, 可适当发挥;  
2. 不少于 60 个词。

Welcome to our zoo. Look at the monkey. His name is Tom. He's 4. He's from Jiangsu. And he's brown. Of course, he's smart but he's a little shy. He likes climbing trees very much. Now look! He's in the tree.

Now we come to the tiger's house. The tiger is Jenny. She's from Jilin. She's only 6 years old. You can see her two big eyes and she looks very strong. But she is a bit lazy and scary. Don't go close to her. She likes sleeping best.

## Unit 6 检测卷

### 一、听力测试。(每小题 1 分,共 15 分)

A)请听下面三段对话。每段对话后有一小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听完每段对话后,你都将有 10 秒钟的时间回答有关小题和阅读下一小题。每段对话读两遍。

- ( B )1. What's the man eating?  
A. Pears.                      B. Bananas.                      C. Apples.
- ( A )2. What's Jim doing?  
A. He is cleaning his room.  
B. He is reading a book in his room.  
C. He is watching TV in his room.
- ( C )3. Where is Tom?  
A. In the park.                      B. At home.                      C. In the school.

B)请听下面一段对话和一段独白。每段对话或独白后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听每段对话或独白前,你都将有 30 秒钟的时间阅读各小题。每段对话或独白读两遍。

请听下面一段对话,回答第 4 至第 6 小题。

- ( B )4. What is Julie doing?  
A. Visiting Larry.                      B. Reading a book.                      C. Playing games.
- ( A )5. Who is watching TV?  
A. Larry.                      B. Julie.                      C. Sarah.
- ( C )6. When do they want to go to a movie?  
A. At 12:00.                      B. At 14:00.                      C. At 16:00.

请听下面一段独白,回答第 7 至第 10 小题。

- ( A )7. What's the TV show about?  
A. Animals.                      B. People.                      C. Sports.
- ( B )8. Where's Linda's mother?  
A. In her room.                      B. On the sofa.                      C. Near the table.
- ( C )9. Who is listening to a CD?  
A. Linda.                      B. John.                      C. Tina.
- ( B )10. What do we know about the dog?  
A. Her name is Friday.                      B. She's cute.                      C. She is under the table.

C)请听下面一段独白,根据独白内容完成下列句子,每个空格不超过三个单词。听独白前,你将有 50 秒钟的时间阅读句子内容。独白读两遍。

11. John is doing his math homework at nine o'clock.  
12. John's father is reading a newspaper at nine o'clock.  
13. John's mother is talking to her cousin on the phone.  
14. Jane is four years old.  
15. The dog is sleeping at nine o'clock.

### 二、单项选择。(每小题 1 分,共 10 分)

请阅读下面各小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- ( C )16. —Would you like to go to the movies with me?  
—That sounds \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. delicious                      B. well                      C. good                      D. boring
- ( B )17. Tom is good \_\_\_\_\_ football. He is \_\_\_\_\_ the football team.  
A. in; on                      B. at; on                      C. on; in                      D. in; in
- ( C )18. Look! There are many \_\_\_\_\_ playing on the playground.  
A. child                      B. man                      C. children                      D. woman
- ( D )19. One of the twins is a teacher, and \_\_\_\_\_ is a policeman.  
A. other                      B. others                      C. the others                      D. the other
- ( A )20. —Where is Mary?  
—She is talking \_\_\_\_\_ the phone with Nancy in her room.  
A. on                      B. in                      C. at                      D. about
- ( B )21. The soup is really \_\_\_\_\_. Can you tell me how to make it?  
A. terrible                      B. delicious                      C. friendly                      D. relaxing
- ( A )22. —Is the woman listening to a CD?  
—\_\_\_\_\_. She likes listening to music.  
A. Yes, she is                      B. No, she isn't                      C. Yes, she does                      D. Yes, it is
- ( C )23. —I \_\_\_\_\_ the No. 2 bus just now.  
—Don't worry, the next will be in 10 minutes.  
A. caught                      B. failed                      C. missed                      D. lost
- ( A )24. —Hello! \_\_\_\_\_ Peter.  
—Hello, Peter! It's Julie here.  
A. This is                      B. I am                      C. It is                      D. That is
- ( C )25. —What are you doing, Bill?  
—Not much. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ helping my mom with her housework.  
A. only                      B. also                      C. just                      D. often

### 三、完形填空。(25 分)

A)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后从各小题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入相应空白处的最佳选项。(每小题 1 分)

Tony and Bill are in the same school, 26 they are in different classes. Their favorite 27 is Chinese. They 28 Chinese is very interesting. They go to school on weekdays. They go to school 29 7:00 in the morning. Today is Tuesday. Tony and Bill are in their own(自己的) classrooms.

Tony 30 an English class. Look! He is talking 31 his English teacher in English. Bill is having a Chinese class. His teacher is talking 32 Beijing Opera with them. The students are looking at their teachers. They 33 carefully(认真地). But one of Tony's classmates 34 a book, because he isn't good at English and he 35 English.

- ( A )26. A. but                      B. and                      C. or                      D. because  
( D )27. A. sport                      B. language                      C. country                      D. subject  
( A )28. A. say                      B. speak                      C. tell                      D. talk

- ( C )29. A. in                      B. on                      C. at                      D. about  
 ( D )30. A. have                      B. had                      C. has                      D. is having  
 ( B )31. A. at                      B. to                      C. for                      D. of  
 ( C )32. A. to                      B. in                      C. about                      D. at  
 ( C )33. A. listen to                      B. listening to                      C. are listening                      D. are listening to  
 ( B )34. A. are reading                      B. is reading                      C. reads                      D. read  
 ( B )35. A. likes                      B. doesn't like                      C. don't like                      D. isn't liking

B)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后用方框中所给单词的适当形式填空,每个词限用一次。(每小题1.5分)

stop with fish famous young do place busy book park

Lisa, James, Grace and Alan are in different 36. places now. What are they 37. doing ?  
 Hi, I'm James. I'm standing at a bus 38. stop and waiting for a bus. I want to go to the bookstore to buy some 39. books . Oh, my bus is coming. Bye.  
 My name is Lisa. I'm in the 40. park with my parents. We are taking a walk by the river. We can see 41. fishes swimming here and there in the water.  
 Hello! I'm Grace. I'm visiting a museum 42. with my friends. This is a 43. famous museum with a long history. There are a lot of old things in it.  
 I'm Alan. As a reporter, I'm very 44. busy every day. I'm on the way to a swimming club now. I want to meet the swimming star Michael. He is from the US. He is 45. young , but he is famous.

#### 四、阅读理解。(25分)

A)阅读短文,根据短文内容从每题所给的A、B、C、D四个选项中选出最佳选项。(每小题2分)

- It's seven forty in the morning. The children are coming into the classroom. A boy is opening the windows. Some students are laughing and talking. Some are listening to them. Some are reading.  
 Mr. Wang is standing in the front of the teacher's desk. He is writing something on the blackboard. Li Xin and Liu Dong are wearing their new dresses today. Li Xin is cleaning her desk. Liu Dong is helping her. They look happy. What is Alice doing? She is still playing basketball.  
 ( D )46. What time are the children coming into the classroom?  
 A. At 7:40 p. m.      B. At 7:14 p. m.      C. At 7:14 a. m.      D. At 7:40 a. m.  
 ( B )47. Who's their teacher?  
 A. Miss Li.              B. Mr. Wang.              C. Mrs. Wang.              D. Mrs. Liu.  
 ( A )48. What is their teacher doing?  
 A. He is writing something on the blackboard.  
 B. He is helping his students do their homework.  
 C. He is wearing his new shirt.  
 D. He is cleaning his desk.  
 ( B )49. Li Xin and Liu Dong look \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. young              B. happy              C. tired              D. old  
 ( B )50. Who does the underlined word "her" refer to?  
 A. Mr. Wang.              B. Li Xin.              C. Alice.              D. Jane.

B)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后从下面方框的七个选项中选择五个还原到文章中,使短文意

思通顺、结构完整。(每小题3分)

There is a park near my home. 51. D Some of them go to the park every day. Look! That is Mr. King. 52. A Some children are playing a game. Some boys are playing football. Lucy and Lily are standing under a big tree. 53. F There is a small river in the park. 54. E Some children are sitting in the boats with their parents. Listen! A girl is singing. 55. B I come here every day.

- A. He is sitting on a chair and watching the children.  
 B. It's really a nice park.  
 C. There are many trees in the park.  
 D. People like to go to this park after work.  
 E. We can see some boats on the water.  
 F. They are talking about their favorite movies.  
 G. The water in the river is very clean.

#### 五、补全对话。(每小题2分,共10分)

- Cindy: 56. Hello, Gina !  
 Gina: Hello, Cindy!  
 Cindy: 57. What are you doing ?  
 Gina: I am reading a book. It's kind of boring.  
 Cindy: 58. Do you want to go to the movies ? There is a new movie this afternoon.  
 Gina: That sounds great. Can I ask Laura to go with me?  
 Cindy: Sure. 59. Where is Laura ?  
 Gina: She is reading in the library. When do you want to go?  
 Cindy: At two o'clock. 60. Is it OK ?  
 Gina: Sure.

#### 六、书面表达。(15分)

假设你是 Alice, 今天是周日,你和朋友们正在家里举行一个小聚会,请你根据下表写一篇短文,描述你们正在做什么。

Names	What is he/she doing?
Bob	singing an English song
Sam	watching TV
Linda	dancing
John	reading

- 要求:1. 内容必须包括表格中所有信息,不要逐句翻译,可适当自由发挥;  
 2. 60 个词左右。

My name is Alice. Today is Sunday. I have no classes. I am having a party with my friends at home. They are Bob, Sam, Linda and John. My mother is cooking nice food for us. What are my friends doing? Bob is singing an English song. Sam is watching TV. Linda is dancing. John is reading. What about me? I'm helping my mother.



## Unit 7 检测卷

### 一、听力测试。(每小题 1 分,共 15 分)

A)请听下面三段对话。每段对话后有一小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听完每段对话后,你都将有 10 秒钟的时间回答有关小题和阅读下一小题。每段对话读两遍。

- ( B )1. What is the weather like?  
A. It's sunny.                      B. It's windy.                      C. It's cloudy.
- ( C )2. What's Jack doing?  
A. He is playing with snow.    B. He is walking in the wind.    C. He is running in the rain.
- ( A )3. What is the weather like in Jilin now?  
A. It's snowy.                      B. It's sunny.                      C. It's rainy.

B)请听下面一段对话和一段独白。每段对话或独白后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听每段对话或独白前,你都将有 30 秒钟的时间阅读各小题。每段对话或独白读两遍。

请听下面一段对话,回答第 4 至第 6 小题。

- ( A )4. How's the weather in Beijing?  
A. It's sunny.                      B. It's warm.                      C. It's very humid.
- ( B )5. Who doesn't like the rainy days?  
A. Sam.                              B. Betty.                              C. Lucy.
- ( A )6. What are Betty and Sam doing?  
A. Talking on the phone.  
B. Visiting their new friend, Lucy.  
C. Playing football in a park.

请听下面一段独白,回答第 7 至第 10 小题。

- ( B )7. What is the speaker doing?  
A. She is skating.  
B. She is reporting the weather in China.  
C. She is walking.
- ( C )8. What's the weather like in Beijing?  
A. Sunny.                              B. Cloudy.                              C. Sunny and cloudy.
- ( B )9. Where can people go skating today?  
A. In Qingdao.                      B. In Harbin.                      C. In Guangzhou.
- ( C )10. What can we learn from the passage?  
A. The weather is sunny in Guangzhou.  
B. The weather is terrible in Qingdao.  
C. The weather is sunny and warm in Xi'an.

C)请听下面一段独白,根据独白内容完成下列句子,每个空格不超过三个单词。听独白前,你将有 50 秒钟的时间阅读句子内容。独白读两遍。

11. It is 5:30 p. m. now.  
12. Mary's mother is cooking at home.  
13. Mary's father is looking for something.

14. Mary is cleaning the table.

15. Mary's brothers are putting the chairs around the table.

### 二、单项选择。(每小题 1 分,共 10 分)

请阅读下面各小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- ( B )16. Be quiet, please. The baby \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. may sleep                      B. is sleeping                      C. sleeps                      D. can sleep
- ( A )17. —\_\_\_\_\_ is the weather \_\_\_\_\_ Beijing?  
—It's windy.  
A. How; in                      B. How; about                      C. What; in                      D. What; about
- ( A )18. —Do you want to join us for dinner?  
—\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Yes, I'd love to                      B. Yes, please  
C. No, thank you so much                      D. No, I don't
- ( C )19. When it rains, she \_\_\_\_\_ a bus to work.  
A. take                              B. is taking                      C. takes                              D. is going to take
- ( B )20. —\_\_\_\_\_ Tom \_\_\_\_\_ anything?  
—No, he isn't.  
A. Can; eat                      B. Is; eating                      C. Does; eat                      D. Will; eat
- ( B )21. It's \_\_\_\_\_ in Australia when it's winter in China.  
A. cold                              B. hot                              C. winter                              D. snowing
- ( C )22. Look! My friend \_\_\_\_\_ a book.  
A. reads                              B. will read                      C. is reading                      D. is going to read
- ( A )23. —What are Tina and Molly doing?  
—They are talking \_\_\_\_\_ the phone \_\_\_\_\_ their vacation.  
A. on; about                      B. in; about                      C. to; about                      D. on; on
- ( B )24. Toronto is a city \_\_\_\_\_ Canada.  
A. at                              B. in                              C. from                              D. on
- ( D )25. They are having a great time \_\_\_\_\_ in the pool.  
A. to swim                      B. swims                      C. swim                      D. swimming

### 三、完形填空。(25 分)

A)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后从各小题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入相应空白处的最佳选项。(每小题 1 分)

Jenny is a student in Hangzhou now. She moves(搬家) to this 26 with her family, 27 Hangzhou is a beautiful place and they like it very much. They are very pleased(满意的) with their 28 in Hangzhou. The city is beautiful and clean. The people are kind and 29 to them. Now Jenny's parents work 30 a bank and Jenny 31 at a great middle school. Everything is going 32. But there is a big problem. They don't like the 33 in Hangzhou. Jenny said, "It's too hot in summer while too cold in winter. On hot days, I have to stay at home. When it's very cold, it often 34. I can't go out to play, either. That's really 35."

- ( A )26. A. city                      B. country                      C. school                      D. capital  
( B )27. A. but                      B. because                      C. so                      D. or  
( B )28. A. work                      B. life                      C. study                      D. sports  
( D )29. A. sad                      B. surprised                      C. relaxed                      D. friendly

- ( B )30. A. on                    B. in                    C. under                    D. to  
 ( B )31. A. stays                    B. studies                    C. works                    D. plays  
 ( C )32. A. good                    B. best                    C. well                    D. beautiful  
 ( D )33. A. people                    B. hospital                    C. food                    D. weather  
 ( D )34. A. rain                    B. rainy                    C. is raining                    D. rains  
 ( C )35. A. great                    B. scary                    C. terrible                    D. exciting

B)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后用方框中所给单词的适当形式填空,每个词限用一次。(每小题1.5分)

sun relax interesting join be other vacation play photo cool

Thank you for 36. joining *Around The World Show Today*. We are in Australia. It's a beautiful 37. sunny day! There 38. are many people here on 39. vacation. Some are taking 40. photos, 41. others are lying on the beach. Look at this group of people 42. playing beach volleyball. They look 43. cool! I am surprised they can play in this heat. This is a very 44. interesting place. The people are really very 45. relaxed!

#### 四、阅读理解。(25分)

A)阅读短文,根据短文内容从每题所给的A、B、C、D四个选项中选出最佳选项。(每小题2分)

Everyone talks about the weather, but no one does anything about it. It is true.

People usually begin their talks with "Isn't it a nice day?" "Do you think it will rain?" "What a fine day!"

Many people think they can tell what the weather is going to be like. But they hardly agree with (同意) each other. One man says, "Do you see how cloudy it is in the east? It's going to rain tomorrow." Another man will say, "No, it's going to be fine tomorrow."

People often look for the weather they want. When a farmer needs water, he looks for something to tell him it's going to rain. He won't believe(相信) anything else. When friends have a journey, they are sure the weather is going to clear up very quickly.

Almost(几乎) everything listens to what the weatherman says, but it doesn't always tell us what we want, and sometimes he makes a mistake. Still he probably comes closer to being correct than anyone else.

- ( B )46. "No one does anything about it" means \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. no one can make the weather                    B. no one can change the weather  
 C. no one can talk about the weather                    D. everyone likes the weather
- ( A )47. \_\_\_\_\_ is a common(普通的) way to start a talk.  
 A. Talking about the weather                    B. Keeping silent  
 C. Asking each other's name                    D. Talking about yourself
- ( D )48. Many people hope the weather will be \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. fine                    B. rainy                    C. snowy                    D. like what they like to be
- ( A )49. The weatherman probably is a man who \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. reports the weather                    B. can see the weather  
 C. can change the weather                    D. likes the weather very much
- ( C )50. The weatherman \_\_\_\_\_ makes a mistake.  
 A. often                    B. never                    C. sometimes                    D. always

B)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后从下面方框的七个选项中选择五个还原到文章中,使短文意思通顺、结构完整。(每小题3分)

Linda has a happy family. 51. G her father, mother, sister and Linda herself. Her father is a doctor in a big hospital. 52. F Linda and her sister are both middle school students. 53. E because many sick(生病的) people need his help. When he is free, he likes telling the girls jokes. 54. D Their mother is also very busy. 55. C Linda and her sister love their parents very much.

- A. Their father likes his job.  
 B. They love each other.  
 C. But she always cooks meals and washes clothes for the family.  
 D. These jokes always make them laugh.  
 E. Their father is always very busy,  
 F. And her mother is a shop assistant.  
 G. There are four people in her family:

#### 五、补全对话。(每小题2分,共10分)

(K=Kate T=Tim)

K: Hello! This is Kate.

T: Hi, Kate! 56. This is Tim. Where are you now?

K: I'm in Shanghai, China.

T: Really? 57. How's it going \_\_\_\_\_?

K: Not bad. People in Shanghai are friendly.

T: 58. How's the weather in Shanghai/What's the weather like in Shanghai? Is it cold?

K: No, it isn't. It's sunny and warm these days.

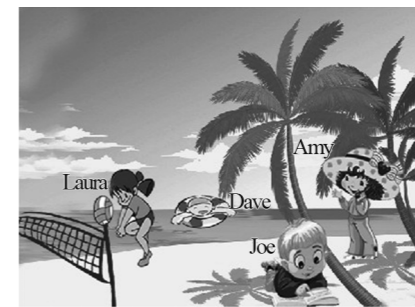
T: 59. That's good. It's raining in Toronto today. The weather is a little cold.

K: I like the weather in China. I want to visit the places of interest(名胜) in Shanghai.

T: 60. Have a good/great/wonderful/time \_\_\_\_\_!

#### 六、书面表达。(15分)

假如你是艾米(Amy),你正和你的三个好朋友戴夫(Dave)、乔(Joe)、劳拉(Laura)在三亚度假。请你根据下图,用英语写一篇60个词左右的短文,介绍三亚的天气情况及你们正在进行的活动。



Hi, I'm Amy. Dave, Joe, Laura and I are on a vacation in Sanya. The weather here is great. It's sunny today. What are we doing now? Dave is swimming. He swims very well. Joe likes reading and he is reading a book. Laura is good at sports and she is playing volleyball. I'm talking on the phone. We're having a good time.

## Unit 8 检测卷

### 一、听力测试。(每小题 1 分,共 15 分)

A)请听下面三段对话。每段对话后有一小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听完每段对话后,你都将有 10 秒钟的时间回答有关小题和阅读下一小题。每段对话读两遍。

- ( C )1. Where is the fruit store?  
A. Across from the bookstore. B. In front of the restaurant. C. Next to the hospital.
- ( A )2. Why does the woman like the neighborhood?  
A. Because it is quiet. B. Because it is clean. C. Because it is big.
- ( C )3. Where does the girl's father work?  
A. In a school. B. In a bank. C. In a police station.

B)请听下面一段对话和一段独白。每段对话或独白后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听每段对话或独白前,你都将有 30 秒钟的时间阅读各小题。每段对话或独白读两遍。

请听下面一段对话,回答第 4 至第 6 小题。

- ( C )4. Where does the woman want to go?  
A. A police station. B. A supermarket. C. A restaurant.
- ( B )5. Is the police station far from here?  
A. Yes, it is. B. No, it isn't. C. We don't know.
- ( C )6. How can the woman get there?  
A. By bus. B. By car. C. On foot.

请听下面一段独白,回答第 7 至第 10 小题。

- ( A )7. What is NOT in the neighborhood?  
A. The restaurant. B. The post office. C. The supermarket.
- ( C )8. What is the park like?  
A. Big and clean. B. Quiet and beautiful. C. Big and beautiful.
- ( C )9. Where is Jim's home?  
A. On the left of the park. B. On the right of the park. C. Across from the park.
- ( C )10. Who does Jim usually play sports with in the park?  
A. His brother. B. His friend. C. His father.

C)请听下面一段独白,根据独白内容完成下列句子,每个空格不超过三个单词。听独白前,你将有 50 秒钟的时间阅读句子内容。独白读两遍。

11. Mary is an English girl.
12. The bank is between the supermarket and the library.
13. You can read books/read a book in the library.
14. The post office is on the left of the supermarket.
15. Mary's house is near the bank.

### 二、单项选择。(每小题 1 分,共 10 分)

请阅读下面各小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- ( C )16. The little boy is walking \_\_\_\_\_ his parents. He can't walk well.  
A. across from B. next to C. between D. behind
- ( C )17. —Why are you standing, Alice?  
—I can't see the blackboard clearly. Two tall boys are sitting \_\_\_\_\_ me.  
A. behind B. next to C. in front of D. in the front of

- ( B )18. —What's your plan for this weekend?  
—I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ it with my grandparents.  
A. take B. spend C. give D. pay
- ( D )19. —Is there a bookshop near your school?  
—\_\_\_\_\_. The bookshop is very far away from my school.  
A. Yes, it is B. No, it isn't C. Yes, there is D. No, there isn't
- ( C )20. —What do you think of the Children's Park?  
—I think it's a good place \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. have fun B. having fun C. to have fun D. has fun
- ( D )21. —Excuse me. Is there a \_\_\_\_\_ near here?  
—Yes, there is. I often go there to post letters.  
A. bank B. school C. pay phone D. post office
- ( A )22. —Is there a big hotel in the neighborhood?  
—Yes, it's \_\_\_\_\_ Center Street \_\_\_\_\_ the right.  
A. on; on B. in; in C. down; in D. on; in
- ( A )23. —It is too noisy here. I want to go to a \_\_\_\_\_ place.  
—How about Zhongshan Park? There \_\_\_\_\_ so many people or cars there.  
A. quiet; aren't B. quiet; are C. fun; aren't D. fun; are
- ( B )24. —Jack wants \_\_\_\_\_ to the library because he enjoys \_\_\_\_\_ there.  
—Me, too.  
A. going; reading B. to go; reading C. to go; to read D. going; to read
- ( D )25. —I hope you have a good trip.  
—\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. You're welcome B. You're right C. I think so D. Thank you

### 三、完形填空。(25 分)

A)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后从各小题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入相应空白处的最佳选项。(每小题 1 分)

Tom 26 near the sea. Their house is not very high, but it is beautiful. There 27 big trees and a small garden in front of their 28. They plant flowers in the garden. Some are red. Some are white 29 some are blue. Tom and his family love 30 garden very much.

Tom and his sister go to school 31 bus. The bus is comfortable. There are air conditioners in the bus. And it is a double-floor bus. After school, they sometimes help their mom 32 some shopping at the Shopping Center, and sometimes help their 33 in the garden. On weekends, they often take some photos by the sea. 34 summer, they often go swimming 35 their parents.

- ( A )26. A. lives B. likes C. plays D. takes
- ( B )27. A. is B. are C. was D. be
- ( D )28. A. sea B. school C. family D. house
- ( D )29. A. but B. or C. because D. and
- ( C )30. A. they B. them C. their D. theirs
- ( B )31. A. on B. by C. take D. sit
- ( A )32. A. do B. doing C. does D. did
- ( B )33. A. teacher B. dad C. friend D. family
- ( A )34. A. In B. On C. At D. To
- ( D )35. A. and B. for C. of D. with

B)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后用方框中所给单词的适当形式填空,每个词限用一次。(每小题 1.5 分)

turn ride two across police restaurant between far begin along

Mike lives in New York. His father has a 36. restaurant and his mother works in the 37. police station. He is seven years old and he 38. begins to go to school this autumn. The school is a little 39. far from his home and his parents are very busy. So Mike 40. rides his bike to school. He rides 41. along Center Street. Then 42. turn left at the 43. second crossing. Next, go down the Fifth Avenue and the school is 44. between the bank and the shop. It's 45. across from a library.

四、阅读理解。(25分)

A) 阅读短文, 根据短文内容从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出最佳选项。(每小题 2 分)

Dear Amy,

Today I want to tell you something about my neighborhood.

I live on a big street. To the left of my house is a big park. The police station is across from my house. There is a hotel on the left of the park. Between the hotel and a Japanese restaurant there is a small bank. A big supermarket is across from the Japanese restaurant.

On weekends, my family often plays sports in the park. My mother often shops in the supermarket.

What about your neighborhood?

Julia

Dear Julia,

I live on a small street. My house is in the middle of the street. In front of my house there is a small supermarket. To the left of the supermarket is a library and to the right of the supermarket is a post office. Behind my house there is a small park with a few trees and a small garden (花园). At the end of the street there is a hill (小山) with lots of trees.

On weekends, my family often climbs the hill. It takes us about 15 minutes to walk there from our house.

Amy

- ( B ) 46. Julia's house is across from \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. the post office      B. the police station      C. the supermarket      D. the bank
- ( A ) 47. \_\_\_\_\_ is between Julia's house and the hotel.  
 A. The park      B. The bank  
 C. The supermarket      D. The restaurant
- ( C ) 48. Julia's family often \_\_\_\_\_ in the park on weekends.  
 A. reads books      B. eats lunch      C. plays sports      D. takes photos
- ( D ) 49. The park is \_\_\_\_\_ Amy's house.  
 A. across from      B. in front of      C. next to      D. behind
- ( C ) 50. It's about \_\_\_\_\_ from Amy's house to the hill.  
 A. ten minutes' walk      B. ten minutes' bus ride  
 C. fifteen minutes' walk      D. fifteen minutes' bus ride

B) 先阅读短文, 掌握其大意, 然后从下面方框的七个选项中选择五个还原到文章中, 使短文意思通顺、结构完整。(每小题 3 分)

Tom and Mike are good friends. Sometimes they are kind to each other. 51. C But some of their classmates say they are like brothers.

On Sunday, they go out for a walk together. At noon they are very hungry and they go into a restaurant to have lunch. The waiter comes up to them and asks, 52. "A"

"Please bring us two apples first," says Tom.

53. G Mike takes the bigger one at once. Tom gets angry. "You are impolite(没礼貌的). Why don't you take the smaller one?" Tom says.

Mike says with a smile, 54. "E If I let you take first, which one will you choose(选择)?"

55. "B" says Tom.

"Yes," Mike says, "if you take the smaller one, the bigger one will be mine. Don't you think so?"

- A. What can I do for you?  
 B. Of course I'll take the smaller one.  
 C. Sometimes they are not.  
 D. Mike likes the bigger one.  
 E. But I am right.  
 F. Tom will take the smaller one.  
 G. The waiter puts the two apples on the table.

五、补全对话。(每小题 2 分, 共 10 分)

A: Excuse me. Is there a post office near here?

B: 56. Yes, there is.

A: Great! So can you tell me the way?

B: 57. Of course/Sure/Yes, I can. Just walk down this street. When you see a library, turn right. Go down Center Street. You can see it on the left of Center Street.

A: 58. Is it far (from here)?

B: No, it isn't. You can walk or take No. 1 bus.

A: 59. Where can I take No. 1 bus?

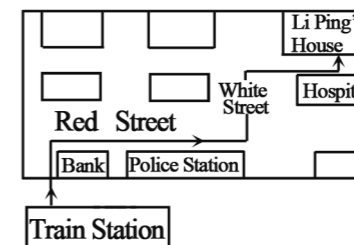
B: There. You can take it in front of the restaurant.

A: Thanks a lot.

B: 60. You're welcome/Not at all.

六、书面表达。(15 分)

假如你叫李平, 你的网友玛丽(Mary)将去你家拜访你, 可她不知道从火车站怎么去你家。请参照下面的路线图给玛丽发一封电子邮件, 告诉她具体的路线。词数: 60 个左右。



Dear Mary,

I will tell you the way to my house. Please take a taxi from the train station. You pass a bank on your right. Turn right and go along Red Street. You can find a police station on your right. Turn left at the second crossing and go along White Street. Then turn right at the first crossing. You can see my house on your left. It's across from a hospital.

Yours,  
 Li Ping



## Unit 9 检测卷

### 一、听力测试。(每小题 1 分,共 15 分)

A)请听下面三段对话。每段对话后有一小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听完每段对话后,你都将有 10 秒钟的时间回答有关小题和阅读下一小题。每段对话读两遍。

- ( B )1. What does Mary look like?  
 A. She's a little thin.      B. She has long hair.      C. She has short hair.
- ( A )2. Who's the woman's favorite movie actor?  
 A. Jackie Chan.      B. Jackson.      C. We don't know.
- ( C )3. Where is Peter from?  
 A. America.      B. English.      C. Canada.

B)请听下面一段对话和一段独白。每段对话或独白后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听每段对话或独白前,你都将有 30 秒钟的时间阅读各小题。每段对话或独白读两遍。

请听下面一段对话,回答第 4 至第 6 小题。

- ( C )4. What is the relationship (关系) between Frank and Tony?  
 A. Workmates.      B. Relatives(亲戚).      C. Friends.
- ( B )5. What does Tony do?  
 A. A teacher.      B. A student.      C. An actor.
- ( C )6. When does Tony go swimming?  
 A. On weekdays.      B. On Wednesday.      C. On weekends.

请听下面一段独白,回答第 7 至第 10 小题。

- ( B )7. How old is Mr. Chen?  
 A. 28.      B. 38.      C. 48.
- ( C )8. Where is Mr. Chen from?  
 A. Jiangxi.      B. Jiangsu.      C. Shanghai.
- ( A )9. What does Mr. Chen look like?  
 A. He is tall.      B. He's short.      C. He's thin.
- ( B )10. How many people are there in Mr. Chen's family?  
 A. Three.      B. Four.      C. Five.

C)请听下面一段独白,根据独白内容完成下列句子,每个空格不超过三个单词。听独白前,你将有 50 秒钟的时间阅读句子内容。独白读两遍。

11. Jack likes playing the guitar.
12. Tom is short with black hair.
13. John is of medium build with brown hair.
14. They often play music together after class.
15. They think making a singing group is interesting.

### 二、单项选择。(每小题 1 分,共 10 分)

请阅读下面各小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- ( A )16. —What does your friend look like?  
 —\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. He is thin      B. She is a kind girl  
 C. He likes music      D. She has good-looking

- ( B )17. —Is he heavy?  
 —No, he is a little bit \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. tall      B. thin      C. short      D. quiet

- ( C )18. —Which is your teacher?  
 —The one \_\_\_\_\_ thick glasses is.  
 A. by      B. on      C. with      D. in

- ( C )19. —Who is in the classroom now?  
 —\_\_\_\_\_. All the students are on the playground.  
 A. Somebody      B. Anybody      C. Nobody      D. Everybody

- ( D )20. —I can't see the things clearly there.  
 —You can wear your \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. sweater      B. shoes      C. hat      D. glasses

- ( B )21. Wilson wants to go to the \_\_\_\_\_ to see a movie.  
 A. hospital      B. cinema      C. restaurant      D. shop

- ( D )22. Each of the students \_\_\_\_\_ to school on time.  
 A. getting      B. to get      C. get      D. gets

- ( C )23. —Does Mary have long \_\_\_\_\_ short hair?  
 —She has long hair.  
 A. with      B. and      C. or      D. for

- ( A )24. The pear is very sweet. Please give me \_\_\_\_\_ one.  
 A. another      B. other      C. others      D. the other

- ( C )25. —Your dress is very beautiful.  
 —\_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. No, it isn't      B. Yes, it is      C. Thank you      D. Not at all

### 三、完形填空。(25 分)

A)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后从各小题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入相应空白处的最佳选项。(每小题 1 分)

Mr. and Mrs. Miller have a son and a daughter. 26 names are Alan and Mary. Mary is a student of a university. She is 27. Their neighbors say to Mr. and Mrs. Miller, "Your 28 is beautiful. She is tall and pretty thin. She has long curly 29." Mary doesn't like to talk with other people. She is a little 30. Alan is twenty-five, but he 31 a bit old, 32 he doesn't have much hair. His hair is 33. The color is like the color of bananas. He's very tall and is of medium 34. He is a policeman and usually wears the 35.

- ( C )26. A. Her      B. His      C. Their      D. Our
- ( C )27. A. clever      B. ugly      C. good-looking      D. smart
- ( A )28. A. daughter      B. son      C. children      D. kids
- ( B )29. A. hairs      B. hair      C. beard      D. mustache
- ( C )30. A. outgoing      B. fun      C. quiet      D. cute
- ( B )31. A. is      B. looks      C. likes      D. looks like
- ( B )32. A. so      B. because      C. when      D. if
- ( A )33. A. blonde      B. brown      C. white      D. black





## Unit 10 检测卷

### 一、听力测试。(15 小题,每小题 1 分,共 15 分)

A)请听下面三段对话。每段对话后有一小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听完每段对话后,你都将有 10 秒钟的时间回答有关小题和阅读下一小题。每段对话读两遍。

- ( A )1. What would the man like?  
 A. Bread.                      B. Milk.                      C. Eggs.
- ( B )2. Where is the fly?  
 A. On the bread.              B. In the porridge.        C. In the soup.
- ( B )3. How much should the man pay for the pancakes?  
 A. 15 yuan.                      B. 10 yuan.                      C. 20 yuan.

B)请听下面一段对话和一段独白。每段对话或独白后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听每段对话或独白前,你都将有 30 秒钟的时间阅读各小题。每段对话或独白读两遍。

请听下面一段对话,回答第 4 至第 6 小题。

- ( C )4. What time does Linda usually get up?  
 A. At 6:00.                      B. At 6:30.                      C. At 7:00.
- ( B )5. How many meals does Harry have a day?  
 A. 2.                                  B. 5.                                  C. 3.
- ( C )6. What does Harry like best?  
 A. Fish.                              B. Beef.                              C. Pork.

请听下面一段独白,回答第 7 至第 10 小题。

- ( A )7. What does Li Lei have for breakfast?  
 A. Porridge.                      B. Pancakes.                      C. Ice-cream.
- ( C )8. How does Li Lei go to school?  
 A. On foot.                      B. By bike.                      C. By bus.
- ( B )9. Where does Li Lei have lunch?  
 A. At a restaurant.              B. At his school.                      C. At his house.
- ( C )10. What does Li Lei think of the food there?  
 A. Awful.                              B. Just so so.                      C. Delicious.

C)请听下面一段独白,根据独白内容完成下列句子,每个空格不超过三个单词。听独白前,你将有 50 秒钟的时间阅读句子内容。独白读两遍。

11. Kate is in No. 5 Middle School in Nanchang.  
 12. Kate goes to school by bike.  
 13. Kate thinks English is the most interesting.  
 14. Kate likes playing table tennis very much.  
 15. Kate usually goes to bed at ten.

### 二、单项选择。(每小题 1 分,共 10 分)

请阅读下面各小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- ( D )16. —Would you like some noodles?

—Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ noodles, please.

- A. a size of                      B. a color of                      C. a kind of                      D. a bowl of
- ( A )17. —What would she like for her breakfast?  
 —A large bowl of \_\_\_\_\_, please.  
 A. noodles                      B. dumpling                      C. porridges                      D. egg
- ( D )18. —Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ pancakes? There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ bread left.  
 —Yes, please.  
 A. any; some                      B. some; some                      C. many; any                      D. some; any
- ( C )19. —How do you like your head teacher?  
 —We all love her. She is very \_\_\_\_\_ with us.  
 A. special                      B. favorite                      C. popular                      D. different
- ( D )20. Please save the water. We are \_\_\_\_\_ water now.  
 A. need of                      B. need for                      C. short for                      D. short of
- ( B )21. —What can I do for you?  
 —Please wash the pears, and \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. cut up it                      B. cut them up                      C. cut it up                      D. cut up them
- ( B )22. —I don't like beef. How about you?  
 —I don't like pork, eggs \_\_\_\_\_ coffee.  
 A. and                                  B. or                                  C. but                                  D. also
- ( A )23. —What \_\_\_\_\_ the number of the tourists in your group?  
 —About fifty. A number of them \_\_\_\_\_ from Jiangxi province.  
 A. is; are                              B. is; is                              C. are; is                              D. are; are
- ( D )24. —What would you like for supper?  
 —I'd like a large bowl of \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. vegetable noodle                      B. vegetables noodles  
 C. vegetables noodle                      D. vegetable noodles
- ( A )25. —Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ football with me?  
 —Yes. I like \_\_\_\_\_ football very much.  
 A. to play; playing                      B. playing; playing  
 C. play; to play                      D. playing; to play

### 三、完形填空。(25 分)

A)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后从各小题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入相应空白处的最佳选项。(每小题 1 分)

Alice comes from Australia. She is eighteen years old. She's going to 26 with the Black family for a year. Alice comes to England 27 she wants to study English. She helps Mrs. Black in the 28 and goes to English classes every Wednesday and Friday afternoon.

Alice is 29 in London. 30 is strange to her. She finds life is 31 from that in Sydney. Some things are 32 in London, but other things are not so nice. It's very dear(昂贵的) to 33 yourself in London. It's dear to have a meal at a restaurant or go to a cinema.

Alice has got used to(习惯) many things already, but she can't get used to 34 in England. "You English eat so much in the morning," she often says. "Fruits, porridge, eggs, tea and bread. How can you eat all that food so 35 in the day?"

- ( A )26. A. stay                      B. talk                      C. move                      D. play

- ( C )27. A. when                      B. why                      C. because                      D. how  
 ( C )28. A. London                      B. family                      C. house                      D. school  
 ( B )29. A. old                      B. new                      C. not                      D. student  
 ( D )30. A. Something                      B. Anything                      C. Nothing                      D. Everything  
 ( D )31. A. good                      B. bad                      C. same                      D. different  
 ( B )32. A. new                      B. nice                      C. old                      D. terrible  
 ( D )33. A. see                      B. play                      C. help                      D. enjoy  
 ( C )34. A. study                      B. supper                      C. breakfast                      D. lunch  
 ( A )35. A. early                      B. late                      C. many                      D. much

B) 先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后用方框中所给单词的适当形式填空,每个词限用一次。(每小题 1.5 分)

in same choose noodle difference idea but young vegetable enjoy

People in 36. different parts of our country have very different 37. ideas about what is good to eat. 38. In our country, for example, people from the south like to eat rice while people living in the north prefer bread or 39. noodles. The natives of Hunan or Sichuan 40. enjoy hot food while those of Shanghai or Suzhou will 41. choose sweet dish. 42. But even if people live in the 43. same part of the country, their tastes vary (不同) greatly. Old people and 44. young ones have different tastes; men and women also have their different preferences. In a restaurant, some customers order soups that is thick and heavy, while others drink soup that is thin and clear. A few people only eat 45. vegetables. They do not eat fish or chicken.

#### 四、阅读理解。(25 分)

A) 阅读短文,根据短文内容从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出最佳选项。(每小题 2 分)

My name is Tom. I like eating rice, noodles, strawberries, ice-cream, hamburgers and so on. But my favorite food is dumplings. Every Sunday, my mother makes many dumplings for me. If she has no time, I'll go to the supermarket to buy some. Dumplings look like white boats(船). They are very delicious. On my birthday every year, I usually help my mother make a lot of dumplings. Do you know the reason? Because I often ask some friends to eat them with me. There are different kinds of vegetables and meat in them. My friends also like to eat them very much.

- ( C )46. Which food is Tom's favorite?  
 A. Rice.                      B. Strawberries.                      C. Dumplings.                      D. Ice-cream.  
 ( A )47. If his mother doesn't have time, Tom gets the dumplings from \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. the supermarket                      B. the store                      C. the ice-box                      D. his grandparents  
 ( C )48. Why does Tom usually help his mother make dumplings on his birthday?  
 A. Because he wants to learn how to make them.  
 B. Because he wants to make his mother happy.  
 C. Because he has friends to eat them with him.  
 D. Because he can not buy them from the shop.  
 ( B )49. What do the dumplings look like?  
 A. Fish.                      B. Boats.                      C. Flowers.                      D. Eggs.  
 ( D )50. What can be the best title for this text?  
 A. Food and Drinks                      B. People's Food  
 C. My Birthday                      D. My Favorite Food

B) 先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后从下面方框的七个选项中选择五个还原到文章中,使短文意

思通顺、结构完整。(每小题 3 分)

Some people doesn't like to have breakfast. 51. E Having breakfast is good for you. You must have breakfast before going to school or going to work. What food can you usually have for breakfast? 52. A

You can have a bottle of milk, bread and an egg. 53. D You can also have some vegetables, porridge or noodles. 54. B A small bowl is OK. And you can't have much meat in the morning. 55. G

- A. I have some ideas for you.  
 B. You don't have to have the big bowl of them.  
 C. We don't have to have breakfast.  
 D. Only one egg is OK.  
 E. Do you have breakfast every day?  
 F. You can have a lot of food.  
 G. If you do these things, you will be a healthy person.

#### 五、补全对话。(每小题 2 分,共 10 分)

(W= Waiter S= Sir)

- W: 56. Can I help you, sir \_\_\_\_\_?  
 S: Yes, please give me something to eat.  
 W: 57. What would you like to have this (morning) \_\_\_\_\_?  
 S: What kind of specials do you have?  
 W: 58. We have several specials like fruit juice, cakes and bread \_\_\_\_\_.  
 S: En... fruit juice, cakes and bread. I would like them all.  
 W: 59. What else would you like \_\_\_\_\_?  
 S: I'd also like to have a glass of tomato juice, please.  
 W: 60. Would you like some eggs \_\_\_\_\_?  
 S: No, thanks. I don't like eggs.

#### 六、书面表达。(15 分)

请你给“南方米饭店”(South Rice House)写一则广告(80 个词左右),要求包括以下内容:

1. 米饭品种多样,味道美;
2. 两种特价米饭:鸡汤米饭、牛肉米饭;
3. 欢迎光临本店,地址:南街 15 号(15 South Street);电话:0795-3721499。

Good morning, everyone! There are all kinds of delicious rice at South Rice House. The rice there is nice and cheap. There are two specials today. Special I is chicken soup rice, it has vegetables and chicken. Special II has beef and vegetables and both of them are tasty. What's more, the service there is also wonderful.

So welcome to South Rice House. The address is 15 South Street. The telephone number is 0795-3721499. Go there, you'll have a great time!

## Unit 11 检测卷

### 一、听力测试。(每小题 1 分,共 15 分)

A)请听下面三段对话。每段对话后有一小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听完每段对话后,你都将有 10 秒钟的时间回答有关小题和阅读下一小题。每段对话读两遍。

- ( B )1. When did the girl visit her aunt?  
 A. Last Friday.                      B. Last Saturday.                      C. Last Sunday.
- ( A )2. What did Mike play yesterday?  
 A. Soccer.                              B. Tennis.                              C. Volleyball.
- ( A )3. How was Lily's weekend?  
 A. Wonderful.                      B. Terrible.                      C. Not bad.

B)请听下面一段对话和一段独白。每段对话或独白后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听每段对话或独白前,你都将有 30 秒钟的时间阅读各小题。每段对话或独白读两遍。

请听下面一段对话,回答第 4 至第 6 小题。

- ( A )4. Where did Tony go last weekend?  
 A. The zoo.                              B. The museum.                      C. The library.
- ( A )5. What did Tony see first?  
 A. Giraffes.                              B. Pandas.                              C. Lions.
- ( B )6. What kind of animals did Mary like best?  
 A. Lions.                                  B. Pandas.                              C. Elephants.

请听下面一段独白,回答第 7 至第 10 小题。

- ( A )7. What day is it today?  
 A. Monday.                              B. Saturday.                              C. Sunday.
- ( A )8. How was the weather yesterday?  
 A. Cloudy.                              B. Windy.                              C. Sunny.
- ( C )9. What did the girl buy for her father?  
 A. A T-shirt.                              B. A hat.                                  C. A watch.
- ( C )10. When did they get home?  
 A. At 7:00 p. m.                      B. At 7:30 p. m.                      C. At 8:00 p. m.

C)请听下面一段独白,根据独白内容完成下列句子,每个空格不超过三个单词。听独白前,你将有 50 秒钟的时间阅读句子内容。独白读两遍。

11. I went to the farm last summer .
12. I got to the farm with my friends by bus .
13. The weather was very hot .
14. We saw some cows and milked a cow .
15. We also helped pick apples .

### 二、单项选择。(每小题 1 分,共 10 分)

请阅读下面各小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- ( C )16. The children are having fun \_\_\_\_\_ on the mountains.

- A. play                      B. to play                      C. playing                      D. played
- ( B )17. —What did you do yesterday evening, Tom?  
 —I \_\_\_\_\_ a movie called *Titanic*.  
 A. watch                      B. watched                      C. watching                      D. was watching
- ( C )18. —Is there \_\_\_\_\_ wrong with your watch?  
 —No, \_\_\_\_\_ is wrong with my watch.  
 A. something; anything                      B. anything; anything  
 C. anything; nothing                      D. anything; something
- ( A )19. The weather is not bad. What about \_\_\_\_\_ this weekend?  
 A. going hiking                      B. go hiking                      C. going to hike                      D. go hike
- ( A )20. —\_\_\_\_\_ did you buy yesterday?  
 —Nothing more.  
 A. What else                      B. What thing                      C. What other                      D. What others
- ( C )21. After \_\_\_\_\_, we \_\_\_\_\_ to the library. It was a busy day.  
 A. shop; go                      B. shopping; go                      C. shopping; went                      D. shop; going
- ( D )22. We \_\_\_\_\_ anything at the restaurant. The food there was not good.  
 A. eat                              B. ate                                  C. don't eat                      D. didn't eat
- ( C )23. The Smiths usually \_\_\_\_\_ to Sanya in summer, so they \_\_\_\_\_ there last summer, too.  
 A. go; goes                      B. goes; went                      C. go; went                      D. go; go
- ( A )24. He didn't know how \_\_\_\_\_, so his father \_\_\_\_\_ him last summer.  
 A. to swim; taught                      B. swim; teach                      C. swim; taught                      D. to swim; teach
- ( A )25. There were \_\_\_\_\_ people and \_\_\_\_\_ noise there.  
 A. too many; too much                      B. too many; too many  
 C. too much; too much                      D. too much; too many

### 三、完形填空。(25 分)

A)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后从各小题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入相应空白处的最佳选项。(每小题 1 分)

Once I was a teacher at a primary school. One year, when I taught second-grade students, a new child was late 26 class. I was not very happy. He didn't say 27, but came over to me and said with a smile, "Mrs. Johnson, my name is Daniel. I 28 a short letter for you from my old teacher, but it's not on the 29."

"30 is it?" I asked him. "It's in my 31. She wanted me to tell you how lucky you were to have me in your 32!" I smiled, and then I said, "I have one in my head, too. And she wanted me to 33 you something, too." "Really? What is 34?" "How unlucky you were to have a teacher like me!" I said. "Now you are 35. Please stand and listen to me in class, will you?"

- ( D )26. A. in                      B. after                      C. before                      D. for
- ( B )27. A. hello                      B. sorry                      C. goodbye                      D. thanks
- ( D )28. A. wrote                      B. sent                      C. took                      D. had
- ( A )29. A. paper                      B. desk                      C. book                      D. blackboard
- ( C )30. A. How                      B. Who                      C. Where                      D. Whose
- ( A )31. A. head                      B. hands                      C. eyes                      D. ears
- ( C )32. A. family                      B. office                      C. class                      D. school

- ( C )33. A. ask                      B. say                      C. tell                      D. know  
 ( D )34. A. he                      B. she                      C. this                      D. it  
 ( B )35. A. free                      B. late                      C. happy                      D. busy

B)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后用方框中所给单词的适当形式填空,每个词限用一次。(每小题1.5分)

visit really spend be delicious museum relax sun play photo

The beach is a good place for a vacation. I 36. spent my last summer vacation with my friends there. The weather was hot and 37. sunny. We went swimming in the sea and 38. played beach volleyball on the beach. When we 39. were tired, we lay on the beach and 40. relaxed. I took many 41. photos of the beach. Some of them are very beautiful. There is a 42. museum near the beach. I spent one day 43. visiting it. I saw many old things about the sea in it. There are also some shops near the beach. We could buy all kinds of 44. delicious food in the shops. We 45. really had great fun on the beach. And we want to spend our next vacation there, too.

四、阅读理解。(25分)

A)阅读短文,根据短文内容从每题所给的A、B、C、D四个选项中选出最佳选项。(每小题2分)

Students learn their lessons in class. They sit in the classroom and listen to the teacher. This is a way of learning. Is this the only way for students to learn? Of course not. There is another way to learn. That is students can teach themselves. For example, if you cannot remember something when you are doing your homework, what will you do? You can look at your books to find the answers.

How to teach yourself? The first thing you must do is reading. Read something you are interested in, or you have to read. The second is that you must ask yourself questions. A clever student is usually good at asking questions. The third is to answer the questions yourself by working hard, by reading books, and sometimes by asking other people. These are the ways of teaching yourself. If you keep doing like these for a long time, you are sure to have great success in your study.

- ( A )46. Students usually sit in the classroom \_\_\_\_\_ their teachers.  
 A. listening to      B. looking at      C. talking to      D. reading with  
 ( A )47. If you can't remember something when doing homework, you can look at \_\_\_\_\_ to find the answer.  
 A. your book      B. your magazine      C. your newspaper      D. your teacher  
 ( B )48. From the passage, we know that a clever student is usually good at \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. telling stories      B. asking questions      C. playing baseball      D. reading books  
 ( C )49. If you want to teach yourself, what must you learn first?  
 A. Writing.      B. Speaking.      C. Reading.      D. Asking questions.  
 ( B )50. How many ways of teaching yourself are mentioned(提到) in the passage?  
 A. Two.      B. Three.      C. Four.      D. Five.

B)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后从下面方框的七个选项中选择五个还原到文章中,使短文意思通顺、结构完整。(每小题3分)

What do you do in your free time?

51. E Watch TV? For 15-year-old Deng Chen, her free time is never so relaxing!

Deng Chen has a special family. 52. A And her father can't see things. Deng has to take care of her parents. From the age of six, Deng started to cook and wash clothes for the family.

Now Deng is a student of Grade 9 in Jingjiang No. 2 Middle School. 53. D So she has to live

at school. At school she studies hard and every weekend she comes back home and helps her parents. 54. C In the family only Deng Chen can work. So she does a lot of farm work-watering the fields, growing vegetables... She always has a busy weekend.

The girl lives a hard life, but she feels happy. Deng hopes to go to college and then she can be a doctor. 55. "G" she said. "And I want to be a doctor one day. Then I will help the disabled(残疾人) like my parents."

- A. Her mother can't walk and has to stay in bed all day.  
 B. She loves study.  
 C. She cooks, washes clothes and takes care of her parents.  
 D. The school is far from her home.  
 E. Play computer games?  
 F. They don't want their only daughter to go to school far away.  
 G. If I can go to college, I will take my parents with me.

五、补全对话。(每小题2分,共10分)

(A=Anna M=Mike)

- A: Hi, Mike! 56. How was your weekend \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 M: Oh, it's boring. I don't like it at all.  
 A: Oh, really? 57. What did you do \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 M: You know, it's too hot. So I went swimming in the swimming pool.  
 A: 58. That sounds relaxing \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 M: But there were too many people there.  
 A: 59. How many people were there \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 M: Around six hundred. That's too crowded.  
 A: Well, 60. do you feel cool in the pool \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 M: Of course not. I still feel hot in the water.

六、书面表达。(15分)

根据提示写一篇短文,介绍你的哥哥是如何度过上个周末的。

要求:不少于70个词。

提示:周六上午去同学家做作业,下午和同学去看电影;周日上午去公园踢足球,下午参加了棋类俱乐部。(短文的开头已给出)

*It's sunny last weekend. My brother, John had a busy weekend.*

On Saturday morning, John went to his classmate's home. They did their homework together. They helped with each other. In the afternoon, he went to see a movie with his classmate. They always go to the cinema together. On Sunday morning, he went to play soccer in the park. And in the afternoon, he went to play chess in the chess club. There he made lots of friends.



## Unit 12 检测卷

### 一、听力测试。(每小题 1 分,共 15 分)

A)请听下面三段对话。每段对话后有一小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听完每段对话后,你都将有 10 秒钟的时间回答有关小题和阅读下一小题。每段对话读两遍。

- ( B )1. Where did the girl go on vacation?  
 A. The mountains.                      B. The beach.                      C. The park.
- ( A )2. What did Tom do last weekend?  
 A. He studied for the exam.  
 B. He went to a movie.  
 C. He visited his grandparents.
- ( A )3. When did the girl visit her grandfather?  
 A. On Monday evening.                      B. On Friday evening.                      C. On Saturday evening.

B)请听下面一段对话和一段独白。每段对话或独白后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听每段对话或独白前,你都将有 30 秒钟的时间阅读各小题。每段对话或独白读两遍。

请听下面一段对话,回答第 4 至第 6 小题。

- ( B )4. Where did Peter go last weekend?  
 A. He went to the Guangming Theater.  
 B. He stayed at home.  
 C. He went to the town.
- ( C )5. What did Amy do last weekend?  
 A. She went to a movie.                      B. She went for a walk.                      C. A and B.
- ( B )6. How was Amy's weekend?  
 A. Boring.                      B. Fun.                      C. We don't know.

请听下面一段独白,回答第 7 至第 10 小题。

- ( A )7. What did John do on Saturday afternoon?  
 A. He went shopping.                      B. He did homework.                      C. He went to the park.
- ( B )8. What's the weather like on Sunday?  
 A. Rainy.                      B. Sunny.                      C. Hot.
- ( B )9. How long did John play soccer?  
 A. An hour.                      B. Two hours.                      C. The whole afternoon.
- ( C )10. Who has a birthday party?  
 A. John.                      B. Li Ming.                      C. Lisa.

C)请听下面一段独白,根据独白内容完成下列句子,每个空格不超过三个单词。听独白前,你将有 50 秒钟的时间阅读句子内容。独白读两遍。

11. Lucy and Lily had a busy weekend.  
 12. On Saturday morning, Lucy went shopping with her mother.  
 13. On Saturday afternoon, Lucy played volleyball with her friend.  
 14. On Sunday morning, Lucy and Lily played tennis in the park.  
 15. On Sunday afternoon, Lily studied math and science in the library.

### 二、单项选择。(每小题 1 分,共 10 分)

请阅读下面各小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项。

- ( B )16. They each \_\_\_\_\_ a CD in their bags.  
 A. bring                      B. has                      C. get                      D. take

- ( A )17. —What will the weather be like tomorrow?  
 —\_\_\_\_\_ raining.  
 A. It's going to be                      B. It will                      C. It will be like                      D. It's
- ( A )18. There \_\_\_\_\_ some bread and two cakes \_\_\_\_\_ the plate.  
 A. is; on                      B. are; on                      C. is; over                      D. are; over
- ( C )19. They didn't start the meeting \_\_\_\_\_ the teacher arrived.  
 A. because                      B. or                      C. until                      D. so
- ( A )20. —I saw a little boy \_\_\_\_\_ football on the street.  
 —Oh, it was too dangerous!  
 A. playing                      B. played                      C. plays                      D. to play
- ( B )21. I read an interesting book and \_\_\_\_\_ a funny movie yesterday.  
 A. see                      B. saw                      C. look                      D. looked
- ( B )22. Sally \_\_\_\_\_ late for school this morning because of the traffic.  
 A. will be                      B. was                      C. is                      D. is going to be
- ( B )23. Did you play basketball with your friends \_\_\_\_\_ last weekend?  
 A. at                      B. 不填                      C. in                      D. on
- ( B )24. When he \_\_\_\_\_ young, he \_\_\_\_\_ a good child.  
 A. is; is                      B. was; was                      C. is; was                      D. was; is
- ( C )25. \_\_\_\_\_ bad day it is!  
 A. What                      B. How                      C. What a                      D. How a

### 三、完形填空。(25 分)

A)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后从各小题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入相应空白处的最佳选项。(每小题 1 分)

Peter was a good boy in the past. He studied hard at school. But 26 his parents divorced(离婚), many people thought he wasn't a good boy anymore.

Peter began to arrive 27 for school. His teacher told him to get to school on time, but he 28 did as the teacher said. Sometimes when he got to school, the first 29 was over. In class, he didn't 30 the teacher; he slept. He didn't like talking to others anymore. He often 31 with other boys after school. Once he had to be in hospital for a week, but he didn't stop.

His 32 couldn't stand him. They told Peter he must leave school if he broke(违反) the school 33 again.

On weekends Peter stayed at home and 34 all day playing computer games. When he felt hungry, he only ate some snacks(零食). Nobody 35 for him. He lived with his father. But his father wasn't often at home.

Who can help Peter?

- ( B )26. A. before                      B. after                      C. if                      D. when  
 ( A )27. A. late                      B. slowly                      C. early                      D. soon  
 ( C )28. A. really                      B. often                      C. never                      D. always  
 ( B )29. A. day                      B. class                      C. show                      D. time  
 ( D )30. A. agree with                      B. wait for                      C. look for                      D. listen to  
 ( C )31. A. played                      B. talked                      C. fought                      D. ate  
 ( A )32. A. teachers                      B. parents                      C. friends                      D. classmates  
 ( B )33. A. exams                      B. rules                      C. life                      D. culture  
 ( B )34. A. wanted                      B. spent                      C. hoped                      D. worked  
 ( D )35. A. reported                      B. cleaned                      C. washed                      D. cooked

B)先阅读短文,掌握其大意,然后用方框中所给单词的适当形式填空,每个词限用一次。(每小题 1.5 分)

answer say white come other because want year teach child

When Mary Smith was a student, she always 36. wanted to be a teacher, because she loved 37. children. When she was 22 years old, she began to 38. teach in a small school. She was a good teacher. The children liked to 39. come to her class. One day one of the girls in her class 40. said to her, "Miss Smith, why does a man's hair become 41. white before his beard(胡须)?" Mary laughed and 42. answered, "I don't know, but it happened(发生) to my father." The 43. other children laughed when they heard this.

Then one of the boys said, "I know, Miss Smith! Men's hair becomes white 44. because it's sixteen 45. years older than their beard."

#### 四、阅读理解。(25分)

A) 请阅读下面短文, 根据短文内容从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出最佳选项。(每小题 2 分)

One day, Mr. Smith went to a dinner party. He was wearing very old clothes. He came into the room. But people in the room didn't look at him. They didn't ask him to sit at the table. He wasn't happy. But he said nothing.

Mr. Smith went home quickly and put on his best clothes. He went back to the party. Everyone in the room stood up and looked at him. They gave him good food to eat. Mr. Smith took off his coat, and put it on the food and said, "Eat, coat!" The other people were surprised and asked, "What are you doing? Why do you do that?" Mr. Smith answered, "I am asking my coat to eat food. When I wore old clothes, you didn't look at me. You didn't ask me to sit down. Now I am wearing these nice clothes, and you give me good food. Now I see, you give the food to my coat, not to me."

- ( B ) 46. One day, Mr. Smith went to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. a birthday party    B. a dinner party    C. an English party    D. a movie
- ( B ) 47. When he came into the room, why didn't the people look at him?
- A. Because the people didn't ask him to come.  
B. Because Mr. Smith wore old clothes.  
C. Because Mr. Smith didn't say "hello" to them first.  
D. Because it was night, they didn't see him.
- ( B ) 48. Why did he go home quickly?
- A. Because he didn't want to stay here.  
B. Because he went home for his best clothes.  
C. Because the people there asked him to leave.  
D. Because he didn't like the food there.
- ( C ) 49. What's the meaning of "surprised" in Chinese?
- A. 高兴的    B. 不满的    C. 感到奇怪的    D. 生气的
- ( C ) 50. Which statement is right?
- A. A person in good clothes should eat good food.  
B. A good coat should eat good food.  
C. We can't judge(判断) a man by his clothes.  
D. Mr. Smith is stupid(愚蠢的).

B) 先阅读短文, 掌握其大意, 然后从下面方框的七个选项中选择五个还原到文章中, 使短文意思通顺、结构完整。(每小题 3 分)

51. G Every year, thousands of students travel and work in other countries for a short time. Some want to learn a skill. Others want to have fun. 52. C

Today, there are many companies to help you get started. Usually a company helps you get a job and plan your trip. You pay for your own travel expenses(费用).

53. B Below are some ideas.

Work for a popular teen magazine in the UK.

Teach children music or English in China.

Work at a Canadian ski resort(滑雪场).

Work at a theme park (for example, Disneyland) in the USA.

Some people go for a month. Others stay for six months to a year. 54. F

You need to take money with you for food, clothes, or travel. 55. A

- A. Don't forget to take your passport.  
B. What kind of work and travel projects can you do?  
C. Often, you can do both.  
D. There are some travel programs you can choose.  
E. Today no one would like to stay at home.  
F. Think about your goals and then decide.  
G. A working holiday is a way to see the world and make money.

#### 五、补全对话。(每小题 2 分, 共 10 分)

- A: Hello, Steve. I called you yesterday afternoon, but nobody answered.  
B: Sorry, I wasn't at home.  
A: 56. Where did you go ?  
B: I went to a bookstore.  
A: 57. What were you doing there ?  
B: I was choosing some books.  
A: 58. Did you buy any books yesterday ?  
B: Yes, I did. I bought some storybooks.  
A: Storybooks? I also like them very much. 59. May I borrow some from you ?  
B: Yes. But why not buy some for yourself? I can go with you to the bookstore.  
A: 60. Good idea. Thank you!  
B: You are welcome.

#### 六、书面表达。(15分)

还记得你最难忘的一次经历吗? 请以 *An unforgettable experience* 为题写一篇短文, 描述一次难忘的经历, 并谈谈自己的感想。

要求: 1. 不少于 80 个词。

2. 开头已经给出, 不计入总词数。

*An unforgettable experience*

Everyone has some unforgettable experiences. My unforgettable experience was in last April.

I went to Thailand with my parents last April. We got there at 8:00 in the evening. When we got off the plane, there was a show near the airport. It was very interesting. The weather on the second day was sunny. When we got on the street, we saw many people throwing water at each other. Wow, it's the Water Festival in Thailand!

Thailand is a beautiful country. We stayed there for a week. We visited many places and ate lots of delicious food there.

I know much about Thailand. And I love this trip very much.